

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20

Service user experience in adult mental health

Improving the experience of care for people using adult NHS mental health services

National Clinical Guideline Number X

**National Collaborating Centre for Mental Health
Commissioned by the
National Institute for Health and Clinical
Excellence**

1 **GUIDELINE DEVELOPMENT GROUP MEMBERS**

2 *Guideline Development Group*

3 **Dr Mike Crawford (chair)**

4 Reader in Mental Health Services Research, Imperial College London

5

6 **Dr Diana Rose (chair)**

7 Reader in User-Led Research, Co-director Service User Research Enterprise
8 (SURE), Institute of Psychiatry, King's College, London

9

10 **Professor Tim Kendall (facilitator)**

11 Director, National Collaborating Centre for Mental Health

12

13 **Dr Janice Allister**

14 GP, Peterborough

15

16 **Ms Siobhan Armstrong**

17 Lead Nurse-Intensive Case Reviews, Newcastle and North Tyneside Primary
18 Care Trusts and Northumberland Care Trust

19

20 **Mr Adam Black**

21 Representing service user and carer interests

22

23 **Ms Beverley Costa**

24 CEO and clinical director, Mothertongue counselling and listening service

25

26 **Dr Jane Cronin-Davis**

27 Senior Lecturer, Occupational Therapist, York St John University

28

29 **Ms Jan Cubison**

30 Clinical Service Manager, Sheffield Perinatal Mental Health Service, Sheffield
31 Health & Social Care Foundation Trust

32

33 **Ms Victoria Green**

34 Representing service user and carer interests

35

36 **Ms Mary Nettle**

37 Mental Health User Consultant

38

39 **Mr Leroy Simpson**

40 Representing service user and carer interests

41

42 **Dr Clive Travis**

43 Representing service user and carer interests

44

1 **Mr Peter Woodhams**

2 Carer

3 *National Collaborating Centre for Mental Health*

4 **Mr Benedict Anigbogu**

5 Health Economist

6

7 **Ms Marie Hawton**

8 Research Assistant

9

10 **Ms Katherine Leggett**

11 Project Manager

12

13 **Ms Melinda Smith**

14 Research Assistant

15

16 **Ms Sarah Stockton**

17 Senior Information Scientist

18

19 **Dr Clare Taylor**

20 Editor

21

22 **Dr Craig Whittington**

23 Lead Systematic Reviewer

24 Associate Director (Clinical Effectiveness)

25

26 *Additional staff*

27

28 **Ms Laura Griffith**

29 Senior Researcher, Health Experiences Research Group, Department of

30 Primary Health Care, University of Oxford

31

32 **Ms Sarah Carr**

33 Senior Research Analyst, Social Care Institute for Excellence

34

35 **Ms Maria Rizzo**

36 Senior Research Manager, Matrix Evidence Ltd

37

1 TABLE OF CONTENTS

2	1. PREFACE.....	9
3	1.1 <i>National Guidance.....</i>	9
4	1.1.1 What is guidance?.....	9
5	1.1.2 Uses and limitation of guidance.....	10
6	1.1.3 Why develop national guidance?.....	10
7	1.1.4 From national guidance to local protocols.....	11
8	1.1.5 Auditing the implementation of guidance.....	11
9	1.2 <i>The National Service User Guidance.....</i>	11
10	1.2.1 Who has developed this guidance?.....	11
11	1.2.2 For whom is this guidance intended?.....	12
12	1.2.3 Specific aims of this guidance.....	12
13	1.2.4 Quality Standards.....	12
14	1.2.5 The structure of this guidance.....	13
15	2. Introduction to Service User Experience.....	14
16	2.1 <i>Why is service user experience important?.....</i>	14
17	2.2 <i>Why is service user experience especially important in mental health?.....</i>	14
18	2.2.1 Mental Health Act.....	14
19	2.2.2 Influence of the Mental Health Act on care.....	15
20	2.3 <i>Work that has been done so far.....</i>	15
21	2.4 <i>A framework for person-centred care.....</i>	16
22	3. Method used to develop this guidance.....	18
23	3.1 <i>Overview.....</i>	18
24	3.2 <i>The scope.....</i>	18
25	3.3 <i>The Guidance Development Group.....</i>	19
26	3.3.1 Guidance Development Group meetings.....	19
27	3.3.2 Topic groups.....	19
28	3.3.3 Service users and carers.....	19
29	3.3.4 Special advisors.....	19
30	3.4 <i>Matrix of service user experience.....</i>	20
31	3.5 <i>Review protocol.....</i>	20
32	3.6 <i>literature review.....</i>	21
33	3.6.1 Methodology.....	21
34	3.6.2 The search process.....	21
35	3.6.3 Data abstraction and synthesis.....	24
36	3.7 <i>Key requirements for the provision of high quality service user experience.....</i>	25
37	3.8 <i>Forming the recommendations.....</i>	25
38	3.9 <i>Stakeholder contributions.....</i>	25

1	3.10	<i>Validation of the guidance</i>	26
2	4.	Key problems – review protocol and sources of evidence	27
3	4.1	<i>Introduction</i>	27
4	4.2	<i>Review protocol (key problems)</i>	27
5	4.3	<i>Source of evidence (key problems)</i>	28
6	5.	Access to community care	39
7	5.1	<i>Introduction</i>	39
8	5.2	<i>Key problems regarding access</i>	40
9	5.2.1	<i>Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences</i>	41
10	5.2.2	<i>Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care</i>	42
11	5.2.3	<i>Emotional support, empathy and respect</i>	42
12	5.2.4	<i>Fast access to reliable health advice</i>	43
13	5.2.5	<i>Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals</i>	45
14	5.2.6	<i>Other themes (including stigma)</i>	46
15	5.2.7	<i>Evidence summary</i>	49
16	5.3	<i>Key requirements for the provision of high quality service user experience</i>	50
17	5.4	<i>Evidence to recommendations</i>	52
18	5.5	<i>Recommendations</i>	54
19	5.5.1	<i>Practice recommendations relating specifically to access</i>	54
20	5.5.2	<i>Practice recommendations relating to access and all points on the</i>	
21		<i>pathway</i>	55
22	5.5.3	<i>Research recommendations</i>	55
23	6.	Assessment (non-acute)	56
24	6.1	<i>Introduction</i>	56
25	6.2	<i>Key problems regarding assessment</i>	57
26	6.2.1	<i>Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences</i>	58
27	6.2.2	<i>Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care</i>	58
28	6.2.3	<i>Emotional support, empathy and respect</i>	59
29	6.2.4	<i>Fast access to reliable health advice</i>	60
30	6.2.5	<i>Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals</i>	61
31	6.2.6	<i>Other themes (including stigma)</i>	62
32	6.2.7	<i>Evidence summary</i>	62
33	6.3	<i>Key requirements for the provision of high quality service user experience</i>	63
34	6.4	<i>Evidence to recommendations</i>	64
35	6.5	<i>Recommendations</i>	65
36	6.5.1	<i>Practice recommendations relating specifically to assessment</i>	65
37	6.5.2	<i>Practice recommendations relating to assessment and all points on</i>	
38		<i>the pathway</i>	66
39	6.5.3	<i>Research recommendations</i>	67
40	7.	Community care	68

1	7.1	<i>Introduction</i>	68
2	7.2	<i>Key problems regarding community care</i>	69
3	7.2.1	Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences	70
4	7.2.2	Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care	72
5	7.2.3	Emotional support, empathy and respect	73
6	7.2.4	Fast access to reliable health advice	75
7	7.2.5	Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals.....	75
8	7.2.6	Attention to physical and environmental needs	79
9	7.2.7	Involvement of, and support for, family and carers.....	80
10	7.2.8	Continuity of care and smooth transitions.....	81
11	7.2.9	Other themes.....	82
12	7.2.10	Evidence summary	83
13	7.3	<i>Key requirements for the provision of high quality service user experience</i>	84
14	7.4	<i>Evidence to recommendations</i>	86
15	7.5	<i>Recommendations</i>	88
16	7.5.1	Practice recommendations relating specifically to community care	
17		88	
18	7.5.2	Practice recommendations relating to community care and all	
19		points on the pathway	89
20	7.5.3	Research recommendations.....	91
21	8.	Assessment and referral in crisis (not under the Mental Health Act)	92
22	8.1	<i>Introduction</i>	92
23	8.2	<i>Key problems regarding assessment and referral in crisis</i>	92
24	8.2.1	Fast access to reliable health advice	93
25	8.2.2	Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals.....	94
26	8.2.3	Evidence summary (not under the Mental Health Act).....	94
27	8.3	<i>Key requirements for the provision of high quality service user experience</i>	95
28	8.4	<i>Evidence to recommendations</i>	96
29	8.5	<i>Recommendations</i>	98
30	8.5.1	Practice recommendations related specifically to assessment and	
31		referral in crisis	98
32	9.	Hospital care	100
33	9.1	<i>Introduction</i>	100
34	9.2	<i>Key problems regarding hospital care</i>	101
35	9.2.1	Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences	102
36	9.2.2	Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care	102
37	9.2.3	Emotional support, empathy and respect	103
38	9.2.4	Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals.....	104
39	9.2.5	Attention to physical and environmental needs	107
40	9.2.6	Involvement of, and support for, family and carers.....	108
41	9.2.7	Continuity of care and smooth transitions.....	109
42	9.2.8	Other themes.....	109

1	9.2.9 Evidence summary	109
2	9.3 Key requirements for the provision of high quality service user experience	110
3	9.4 Evidence to recommendations.....	112
4	9.5 Recommendations	113
5	9.5.1 Practice recommendations relating specifically to hospital care .	113
6	9.5.2 Practice recommendations relating to hospital care and all points	
7	on the pathway	115
8	9.5.3 Research recommendations.....	116
9	10. Discharge and transfer of care.....	118
10	10.1 Introduction	118
11	10.2 Key problems regarding discharge and transfer of care	119
12	10.2.1 Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences	119
13	10.2.2 Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care .	120
14	10.2.3 Emotional support, empathy and respect	120
15	10.2.4 Fast access to reliable health advice	121
16	10.2.5 Attention to physical and environmental needs	121
17	10.2.6 Involvement of, and support for, family and carers.....	121
18	10.2.7 Continuity of care and smooth transitions.....	122
19	10.2.8 Evidence summary	123
20	10.3 Key requirements for the provision of high quality service user experience	124
21	10.4 Evidence to recommendations.....	127
22	10.5 Recommendations	129
23	10.5.1 Clinical practice recommendations relating specifically to	
24	discharge and transfer of care	129
25	10.5.2 Research recommendations.....	129
26	11. Detention under the Mental Health Act.....	131
27	11.1 Introduction	131
28	11.2 Key problems regarding detention under the Mental Health Act	132
29	11.2.1 Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences	133
30	11.2.2 Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care .	133
31	11.2.3 Emotional support, empathy and respect	134
32	11.2.4 Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals.....	135
33	11.2.5 Attention to physical and environmental needs	136
34	11.2.6 Other themes.....	137
35	11.2.7 Evidence summary	137
36	11.3 Key requirements for the provision of high quality service user experience	138
37	11.4 Evidence to recommendations.....	140
38	11.5 Recommendations	142
39	11.5.1 Practice recommendations relating specifically to assessment	
40	and treatment under the Mental Health Act.....	142

1	11.5.2	Practice recommendations relating to detention under the	
2		Mental Health Act 2007 and all points on the pathway	144
3	11.5.3	Research recommendations.....	144
4	12.	Interventions to improve service user experience	145
5	12.1	<i>Introduction</i>	145
6	12.1.1	Review protocol (interventions)	146
7	12.1.2	Studies considered	149
8	12.2	<i>Evidence reviewed – mental health.....</i>	162
9	12.2.1	Existing reviews	162
10	12.2.2	Recent studies	164
11	12.2.3	Evidence summary for mental healthcare.....	165
12	12.3	<i>Evidence reviewed – non-mental health.....</i>	165
13	12.3.1	Existing reviews	165
14	12.3.2	Evidence summary for non-mental healthcare	172
15	12.4	<i>Evidence to recommendations.....</i>	173
16	12.5	<i>Recommendations</i>	174
17	12.5.1	Research recommendations.....	174
18	13.	References	175
19	14.	Appendices.....	187
20			
21			
22			

1. PREFACE

2 This piece of guidance has been developed to advise on improving the
3 experience of care for people using mental health services. The guidance
4 recommendations have been developed by a multidisciplinary team of
5 healthcare professionals, service users, their carers and guideline
6 methodologists after careful consideration of the best available evidence. It is
7 intended that the guidance will be useful to health and social care
8 professionals and service commissioners in providing and planning a high-
9 quality experience of care for people using mental health services (see
10 Appendix 1 for more details on the scope of the guidance).

11
12 Although the evidence base is expanding, there are a number of major gaps,
13 and future revisions of this guidance will incorporate new scientific evidence
14 as it develops. The guidance makes a number of research recommendations
15 specifically to address gaps in the evidence base. In the meantime, it is hoped
16 that the guidance will assist health and social care professionals, and people
17 using mental health services and their carers, by identifying ways to improve
18 the experience of care where the evidence from research and clinical
19 experience exists.

20 1.1 NATIONAL GUIDANCE

21 1.1.1 What is guidance?

22 Guidance is derived from the best available research evidence, using
23 predetermined and systematic methods to identify and evaluate the evidence
24 relating to the improvement of the experience of care. Where evidence is
25 lacking, the guidance incorporate statements and recommendations based
26 upon the consensus statements developed by the Guidance Development
27 Group (GDG).

28
29 Guidance is intended to improve the process and outcomes of healthcare in a
30 number of different ways. They can:

- 31
- 32 • be used as the basis to set standards to assess the practice of healthcare
33 professionals
 - 34 • form the basis for education and training of healthcare professionals
 - 35 • assist service users and their carers in making informed decisions
36 about their treatment and care
 - 37 • improve communication between healthcare professionals, service
38 users and their carers
 - 39 • help identify priority areas for further research.

1 **1.1.2 Uses and limitation of guidance**

2 Guidance is not a substitute for professional knowledge and clinical
3 judgement. They can be limited in their usefulness and applicability by a
4 number of different factors: the availability of high-quality research evidence,
5 the quality of the methodology used in the development of the guidance, the
6 generalisability of research findings and the uniqueness of individuals.

7
8 Although the quality of research in this field is variable, the methodology
9 used here reflects current international understanding on the appropriate
10 practice for guideline development (Appraisal of Guidelines for Research and
11 Evaluation Instrument [AGREE]; AGREE Collaboration, 2003¹), ensuring the
12 collection and selection of the best research evidence available and the
13 systematic generation of recommendations applicable to the majority of
14 people using mental health services. However, there will always be some
15 people and situations for which clinical guideline recommendations are not
16 readily applicable. The guidance does not, therefore, override the individual
17 responsibility of healthcare professionals to make appropriate decisions in the
18 circumstances of the individual, in consultation with the person or their carer.

19 **1.1.3 Why develop national guidance?**

20 The National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE) was
21 established as a Special Health Authority for England and Wales in 1999, with
22 a remit to provide a single source of authoritative and reliable guidance for
23 service users, professionals and the public. NICE guidance aims to improve
24 standards of care, diminish unacceptable variations in the provision and
25 quality of care across the NHS, and ensure that the health service is person-
26 centred. All guidance is developed in a transparent and collaborative manner,
27 using the best available evidence and involving all relevant stakeholders.

28
29 In the past, NICE has generated guidance in a number of different ways, three
30 of which are relevant here. First, national guidance is produced by the
31 Technology Appraisal Committee to give robust advice about a particular
32 treatment, intervention, procedure or other health technology. Second, NICE
33 commissions public health intervention guidance focused on types of activity
34 (interventions) that help to reduce people's risk of developing a disease or
35 condition or help to promote or maintain a healthy lifestyle. Third, NICE
36 commissions the production of national clinical guidelines focused upon the
37 overall treatment and management of a specific condition. To enable this
38 latter development, NICE has established four National Collaborating Centres
39 in conjunction with a range of professional organisations involved in
40 healthcare.

41
42 In addition to these types of guidance, NICE has now commissioned guidance
43 and associated quality standards to improve the experience of people using

¹ <http://www.agreetrust.org>

1 NHS services. More specifically, two pieces of guidance were commissioned;
2 guidance developed by the National Collaborating Centre for Mental Health
3 (NCCMH) for people using adult NHS mental health services (the topic of
4 this report) and guidance developed by the National Clinical Guideline
5 Centre (NCGC) for people using general adult NHS services.

6 **1.1.4 From national guidance to local protocols**

7 Once national guidance has been published and disseminated, local
8 healthcare groups will be expected to produce a plan and identify resources
9 for implementation, along with appropriate timetables. Subsequently, a
10 multidisciplinary group involving commissioners of healthcare, primary care
11 and specialist mental health professionals, service users and carers should
12 undertake the translation of the implementation plan into local protocols
13 taking into account both the recommendations set out in this guidance and
14 the priorities set in the National Service Framework for Mental Health
15 (Department of Health, 1999) and related documentation. The nature and
16 pace of the local plan will reflect local healthcare needs and the nature of
17 existing services; full implementation may take a considerable time, especially
18 where substantial training needs are identified.

19 **1.1.5 Auditing the implementation of guidance**

20 This guidance identifies key areas of clinical practice and service delivery for
21 local and national audit. Although the generation of audit standards is an
22 important and necessary step in the implementation of this guidance, a more
23 broadly based implementation strategy will be developed. Nevertheless, it
24 should be noted that the Care Quality Commission will monitor the extent to
25 which Primary Care Trusts, trusts responsible for mental health and social
26 care, and Health Authorities have implemented this guidance.

27 **1.2 THE NATIONAL SERVICE USER GUIDANCE**

28 **1.2.1 Who has developed this guidance?**

29 This guidance has been commissioned by NICE and developed within the
30 NCCMH. The NCCMH is a collaboration of the professional organisations
31 involved in the field of mental health, national service user and carer
32 organisations, a number of academic institutions and NICE. The NCCMH is
33 led by a partnership between the Royal College of Psychiatrists and the
34 British Psychological Society's Centre for Outcomes Research and
35 Effectiveness, based at University College London.

36
37 The GDG, convened by the NCCMH, included people with experience of
38 using mental health services and carers, and professionals from psychiatry,
39 clinical psychology, general practice, nursing, occupational therapy, and the
40 private and voluntary sectors.

41

1 Staff from the NCCMH provided leadership and support throughout the
2 process of guidance development, undertaking systematic searches,
3 information retrieval, appraisal and systematic review of the evidence.
4 Members of the GDG received training in the process of guidance
5 development from NCCMH staff, and the service users and carers received
6 training and support from the NICE Patient and Public Involvement
7 Programme. The NICE Guidelines Technical Adviser provided advice and
8 assistance regarding aspects of the development process.

9
10 All GDG members made formal declarations of interest at the outset, which
11 were updated at every GDG meeting. The GDG met a total of eight times
12 throughout the process of guideline development. The GDG was supported
13 by the NCCMH technical team, with additional expert advice from special
14 advisers where needed. The group oversaw the production and synthesis of
15 research evidence before presentation. All statements and recommendations
16 in this guideline have been generated and agreed by the whole GDG.

17 **1.2.2 For whom is this guidance intended?**

18 This guidance will be relevant for adults using secondary mental health
19 services and covers the care provided by community, secondary, tertiary and
20 other health and social care professionals who have direct contact with, and
21 make decisions concerning the care of adults using those services.

22
23 The guidance will also be relevant to the work, but will not cover the practice,
24 of those in:

- 25
- 26 • occupational health services
- 27 • the independent sector.

28 **1.2.3 Specific aims of this guidance**

29 The guidance aims to:

- 30
- 31 • Develop recommendations and quality standards to provide a
32 framework that describes the key requirements for providing a high
33 quality service user experience.
- 34 • Identify quality measures that set the expected degree of achievement.
- 35 • Identify key areas for improvement in current service user experience.
- 36 • Identify key areas for further research that are likely to improve
37 understanding of how to measure and improve the experience of care
38 within adult mental health services.

39 **1.2.4 Quality Standards**

40 Quality standards are a set of specific, concise quality statements and
41 measures that act as markers of high-quality, cost-effective patient care,
42 covering the treatment and prevention of different diseases and conditions.

1
2 NICE quality standards enable:

- 3
- 4 • Health and social care professionals to make decisions about care
 - 5 based on the latest evidence and best practice.
 - 6 • Service users to understand what service they can expect from their
 - 7 health and social care providers.
 - 8 • NHS Trusts to quickly and easily examine the clinical performance of
 - 9 their organisation and assess the standards of care they provide.
 - 10 • Commissioners to be confident that the services they are providing are
 - 11 high quality and cost effective.
- 12

13 For this topic, a NICE quality standard will be produced based on the
14 guidance recommendations. The guidance and the quality standard will be
15 published at the same time. Further information about how NICE produces
16 quality standards can be found on the NICE website².

17 **1.2.5 The structure of this guidance**

18 The guidance is divided into chapters. The first three provide a general
19 introduction to guidance and to the methods used to develop them. Chapters
20 4 to 11 provides a review of the key problems associated with service user
21 experience of mental health services. Chapter 12 provides a review of
22 interventions designed to improve the experience of care. Within each
23 chapter, an 'evidence summary' section is used to summarise the evidence
24 presented, and an 'evidence to recommendations' section is used explain how
25 the GDG moved from the evidence to the recommendations. Finally,
26 recommendations related to each topic are presented at the end of each
27 chapter. On the CD-ROM, further details about the methods used and
28 evidence underpinning the recommendations can be found (see Text Box 1).
29

Text Box 1: Appendices on the CD-ROM

Search strategies for the identification of studies (interventions review)	Appendix 7
Included study characteristic tables	Appendix 8
Methodology checklists	Appendix 9
List of excluded studies	Appendix 10
Key problems – survey results	Appendix 11
Key problems – Key problems – qualitative review matrix for each guideline	Appendix 12
Key problems – Key problems – qualitative analyses matrix for each guideline	Appendix 13
High priority research recommendations	Appendix 14

30
31

² <http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/qualitystandards/qualitystandards.jsp>

1 **2. INTRODUCTION TO SERVICE** 2 **USER EXPERIENCE**

3 **2.1 WHY IS SERVICE USER EXPERIENCE** 4 **IMPORTANT?**

5 Any attempt to judge the quality of health services would be incomplete
6 without considering the experiences of people who use them. By finding out
7 what service users' think, valuable information can be obtained about
8 problems with the way that services are being delivered and used to assess
9 the impact of efforts to improve the quality of healthcare that is provided.

10
11 While health services aim to ensure that people have access to treatments
12 which are effective and safe, this is only one part of a service user's experience
13 of the healthcare they receive. The way services are accessed, the way that
14 peoples' problems are assessed, how referrals between different components
15 of health systems are managed, aftercare arrangements, and the process of
16 discharge all play an important part in service user's overall experience of the
17 care they receive.

18
19 This is equally true for users of mental health services where the provision of
20 appropriate information and support across the care pathway is as essential
21 part of delivering a high quality service. Misunderstandings and fears about
22 mental health problems and mental health services can act as barriers to
23 people receiving effective treatments. The ability of services to understand
24 and respond to such concerns can improve people's experience of services
25 and help make sure that they make best use of available treatments. Mental
26 health problems can have a major impact on a person's relationships with
27 others and the capacity of staff to form a therapeutic relationship with people
28 who are experiencing emotional distress is the starting point for helping
29 people achieve better mental health.

30
31 Some people with mental health problems have high levels of contact with
32 services over long periods of time. The quality of service user experience is
33 more relevant for these groups due to the high level of contact with these
34 services.

35 **2.2 WHY IS SERVICE USER EXPERIENCE** 36 **ESPECIALLY IMPORTANT IN MENTAL** 37 **HEALTH?**

38 **2.2.1 Mental Health Act**

1 In terms of service user experience, being detained and treated under the
2 Mental Health Act (1983; amended 1995 and 2007; HMSO, 2007) represents a
3 unique experience in health and social care. In no other field can someone be
4 detained and/or treated against their will, with the possible exception of
5 looked after children who are a special case. The English Mental Health Act
6 (HMSO, 2007) is not capacity-based (unlike the Scottish one) which means
7 that service users may be able to make rational decisions but these can be
8 over-ridden usually if risk is perceived to be an issue. Service users subject to
9 the powers of the Mental Health Act (HMSO, 2007) , then, are being forced to
10 be in a place they do not want to be and may be given treatment they do not
11 want. Moreover, most do not change their mind about the appropriateness of
12 the Act's use long after the episode is over. They continue to think it
13 unjustified (Priebe *et al.*, 2009).

14 **2.2.2 Influence of the Mental Health Act on care**

15 In such a situation, it is difficult to deliver care according to the tenets of this
16 guidance simply because many service users subject to the Mental Health Act
17 (HMSO, 2007) will resist efforts to engage them in a therapeutic dialogue as
18 that is not how they perceive the situation. Further, compulsory treatment,
19 such as control, restraint and rapid tranquillisation, can hardly be delivered
20 with 'dignity and respect'. The question must be posed as to what happens
21 when dignity and respect are lost. In this guidance and quality standard some
22 suggestions are made concerning how the most coercive aspects of being
23 subject to the Act may be ameliorated but in effect in many cases what is
24 perceived as 'care' by providers will not be seen that way by service users.
25 Staff must be alert to their perspectives including the possibility that
26 compulsory treatment will be seen as violence.

27
28 The use of the Mental Health Act (HMSO, 2007) has implications for
29 everybody on a ward, detained or not. This at least is the case if the ward is
30 locked, as many are, and informal patients need to ask permission to leave.
31 Further, if as is increasingly the case in many places, there is much use of
32 compulsory treatment this affects the atmosphere on the ward and means that
33 informal patients will be witness to distressing events. Care should be taken
34 to de-brief people who have witnessed such events as well as those who have
35 been subject to them and as well as staff.

36 **2.3 WORK THAT HAS BEEN DONE SO FAR**

37 Over the past few years several documents and initiatives have highlighted
38 the importance of the service user's experience and the need to focus on
39 improving these experiences where possible.

40
41 Lord Darzi's report 'High quality care for all' (2008) highlighted the
42 importance of the entire service user experience within the NHS, ensuring

1 people are treated with compassion, dignity and respect within a clean, safe
2 and well-managed environment.

3
4 The development of the NHS Constitution (2009) was one of several
5 recommendations from Lord Darzi's report. The Constitution describes the
6 purpose, principles and values of the NHS and illustrates what staff, service
7 users and the public can expect from the service. Since the Health Act came
8 into force in January 2010, service providers and commissioners of NHS care
9 have had a legal obligation to take the Constitution into account in all their
10 decisions and actions.

11
12 The King's Fund charitable foundation has developed a comprehensive policy
13 resource - 'Seeing the person in the patient: the point of care review paper'
14 (2008). Some of the topics explored in the paper are used in the development
15 of this guidance and quality standard.

16
17 National initiatives aimed at improving service users' experience of healthcare
18 include NHS Choices, a comprehensive information service that helps people
19 to manage their healthcare and provides service users and carers with
20 information and choice about their care. Local initiatives, such as patient
21 advice and liaison services (PALS), have also been introduced.

22
23 Despite these initiatives, there is evidence to suggest that further work is
24 needed to deliver the best possible experience for users of NHS services.

25
26 In 2005 the Department of Health published 'Delivering race equality in
27 mental health care: an action plan for reform inside and outside services and
28 the government's response to the independent inquiry into the death of David
29 Bennett'. The report contained recommendations about the delivery of mental
30 healthcare to service users, in particular those from black and minority ethnic
31 (BME) communities. The recommendations also address wider issues in
32 mental health settings, such as the safe use of physical interventions.

33
34 High-quality care should be clinically effective, safe and be provided in a way
35 that ensures the service user has the best possible experience of care. This
36 guidance on service user experience, and the quality standard developed
37 from it, will aim to ensure that users of mental health services have the best
38 possible experience of care from the NHS.

39 **2.4 A FRAMEWORK FOR PERSON-CENTRED CARE**

40 Much has been written about the importance of person-centred care, and
41 for many years, all NICE guidelines have explicitly aimed to promote
42 person-centred care to take into account service users' needs,
43 preferences and strengths. Similar terms include *patient-centred*, *people-*
44 *centred*, *consumer-centred*, *personalised* and *individualised* (Institute of
45 Medicine, 2001). Several organisations (for example, the Institute of

1 Medicine; World Health Organization) have used frameworks that set
2 out a number of dimensions of person-centred care, largely derived
3 from that developed for the Picker Institute (Gerteis *et al.*, 1993). Most
4 recently, the Picker Institute Europe has set out eight dimensions,
5 divided into two sub-headings.
6

7 1. The relationship between individual service users and
8 professionals:
9

- 10 • Involvement in decisions & respect for preferences.
11 • Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-
12 care.
13 • Emotional support, empathy and respect.
14

15 2. The way that services and systems work:
16

- 17 • Fast access to reliable health advice.
18 • Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals.
19 • Attention to physical and environmental needs.
20 • Involvement of, and support for, family and carers.
21 • Continuity of care and smooth transitions.
22
23
24

1 3. METHOD USED TO DEVELOP 2 THIS GUIDANCE

3 3.1 OVERVIEW

4 The method used to produce this guidance was developed based on
5 experience gained from the NICE clinical guidelines programme (NICE,
6 2009c) A team of health professionals, lay representatives and technical
7 experts known as the Guidance Development Group (GDG), with support
8 from the NCCMH staff, undertook the development of person-centred
9 guidance, based on the best evidence available. There were six basic steps in
10 the process of developing this guidance:

- 11
- 12 1. Define the scope, which sets the parameters of the guidance and
13 provides a focus and steer for the development work.
- 14 2. Define review questions covering all aspects of the scope.
- 15 3. Develop criteria for evidence searching and search for evidence.
- 16 4. Develop protocols for reviewing the evidence.
- 17 5. Synthesise evidence retrieved, guided by the review questions, and
18 produce evidence summaries.
- 19 6. Answer review questions with evidence-based recommendations for
20 clinical practice.

21 To ensure a service user and carer focus, the concerns of service users and
22 carers regarding health and social care have been highlighted and addressed
23 by recommendations agreed by the whole GDG.

24 3.2 THE SCOPE

25 Topics are selected by the Department of Health and the Welsh Assembly
26 Government, which identify the main areas to be covered by the guidance in a
27 specific remit (see *The Guidelines Manual* [NICE, 2009c] for further
28 information). The NCCMH developed a scope for the guidance based on the
29 remit. The purpose of the scope is to:

- 30
- 31 • provide an overview of what the guidance will include and exclude
- 32 • identify the key aspects of care that must be included
- 33 • set the boundaries of the development work and provide a clear
34 framework to enable work to stay within the priorities agreed by NICE
35 and the NCC and the remit from the Department of Health/Welsh
36 Assembly Government
- 37 • inform the development of the review questions and search strategy
- 38 • inform professionals and the public about expected content of the
39 guidance

- 1 • keep the guidance to a reasonable size to ensure that its development
2 can be carried out within the allocated period.

3 **3.3 THE GUIDANCE DEVELOPMENT GROUP**

4 The GDG consisted of: service users and a carer; professionals in psychiatry,
5 clinical psychology, nursing, social work, occupational therapy and general
6 practice; academic experts in psychiatry and psychology; experts in guidance
7 development. The group had two joint chairs – one professional and one
8 service user. The guidance development process was supported by staff from
9 the NCCMH, who acted as full members of the GDG, and undertook the
10 literature searches, reviewed and presented the evidence to the other
11 members of the GDG, managed the process, and contributed to drafting the
12 guidance.

13 **3.3.1 Guidance Development Group meetings**

14 Seven GDG meetings were held between January 2011 and May 2011. During
15 each day-long GDG meeting, in a plenary session, review questions and
16 associated evidence were presented and assessed, and recommendations
17 formulated. At each meeting, all GDG members declared any potential
18 conflicts of interest, and service user and carer concerns were routinely
19 discussed as part of a standing agenda.

20 **3.3.2 Topic groups**

21 At two meetings, the GDG members formed smaller topic groups to review
22 chapter drafts. These groups were designed to efficiently manage the large
23 volume of evidence appraisal prior to presenting it to the GDG as a whole.
24 Each topic group was chaired by one of the two Chairs, who introduced and
25 led the GDG discussion of the evidence review for that topic and assisted
26 drafting the section of the guidance relevant to the work of each topic group.

27 **3.3.3 Service users and carers**

28 Individuals with direct experience of services gave an integral service-user
29 focus to the GDG and the guidance. The GDG included six service users (one
30 being the joint chair) and one carer. They contributed as full GDG members to
31 writing the review questions, helping to ensure that the evidence addressed
32 their views and preferences, highlighting sensitive issues and terminology
33 relevant to the guidance, and bringing service-user research to the attention of
34 the GDG. In drafting the guidance, they contributed to writing the guidance
35 and creating recommendations from the service user and carer perspective.

36 **3.3.4 Special advisors**

37 Special advisors, who had specific expertise in one or more aspects of
38 treatment and management relevant to the guidance, assisted the GDG,
39 commenting on specific aspects of the developing guidance and making

1 presentations to the GDG. Appendix 3 lists those who agreed to act as special
2 advisors.

3 **3.4 MATRIX OF SERVICE USER EXPERIENCE**

4 While scoping the guidance, the technical team developed a matrix of service
5 user experience, designed to aid the guidance development process. The
6 matrix was based on the dimensions of patient-centred care developed by the
7 Picker Institute Europe³ and the key points on a pathway of care (as specified
8 by the GDG). With regard to terminology, the GDG preferred the term
9 'person-centred' rather than 'patient-centred', therefore the latter is not used
10 in the matrix. For more information about the dimensions of person-centred
11 care, see Section 2.4.

12
13 A separate matrix was developed for non-acute care, acute care – not under
14 the Mental Health Act (HMSO, 2007), and acute care – under the Mental
15 Health Act. Templates for each matrix can be found in Appendix 6. The
16 matrix was primarily used to classify evidence during the data abstraction
17 and synthesis process (see 3.6.3).

18 **3.5 REVIEW PROTOCOL**

19 For each review, the technical team prepared a review protocol that outlined
20 the background, the objectives and the planned methods. Each protocol
21 contained the associated review questions based on the PICO (Population,
22 Intervention, Comparison and Outcome) framework (see Table 1). A
23 summary of the review protocols can be found in Chapters 4 and 11, and the
24 full protocols in Appendix 5.

25

**Table 1: Features of a well-formulated question on effectiveness
intervention – the PICO guide**

Population	Which population of service users are we interested in? How can they be best described? Are there subgroups that need to be considered?
Intervention	Which intervention, treatment or approach should be used?
Comparison	What is/are the main alternative/s to compare with the intervention?
Outcome	What is really important for the service user? Which outcomes should be considered: intermediate or short-term measures; mortality; morbidity and treatment complications; rates of relapse; late morbidity and readmission; return to work, physical and social functioning and other measures such as quality of life; general health status; costs?

26

27 To help facilitate the literature review, a note was made of the best study
28 design type to answer each question. There are four main types of review

³ <http://www.pickereurope.org/patientcentred>

1 question of relevance to NICE guidance (see Table 2). For each type of
 2 question, the best primary study design varies, where 'best' is interpreted as
 3 'least likely to give misleading answers to the question'.

4
 5 However, in all cases, a well-conducted systematic review (of the appropriate
 6 type of study) is likely to always yield a better answer than a single study.

7
 8 Deciding on the best design type to answer a specific review question does
 9 not mean that studies of different design types addressing the same question
 10 were discarded.

11 **Table 2: Best study design to answer each type of question**

Type of question	Best primary study design
Effectiveness or other impact of an intervention	Randomised controlled trial (RCT); other studies that may be considered in the absence of RCTs are the following: internally/externally controlled before and after trial, interrupted time-series
Accuracy of information (for example, risk factor, test, prediction rule)	Comparing the information against a valid gold standard in a randomised trial or inception cohort study
Rates (of disease, service user experience, rare side effects)	Prospective cohort, registry, cross-sectional study
Costs	Naturalistic prospective cost study
Experience of care	Qualitative evidence

12 13 **3.6 LITERATURE REVIEW**

14 The aim of the literature review was to identify and synthesise relevant
 15 evidence from the literature in order to answer the specific review questions
 16 developed by the GDG.

17 **3.6.1 Methodology**

18 A stepwise, hierarchical approach was taken to locating and presenting
 19 evidence to the GDG. The approach used varied depending on the review
 20 question (see the relevant review protocol in Appendix 5).

21 **3.6.2 The search process**

22 A broad preliminary search of the literature was undertaken in June 2010 to
 23 obtain an overview of the issues likely to be covered by the scope, and to help
 24 define key areas. Searches were restricted to clinical guidelines and systematic
 25 reviews, and conducted in the following databases and websites:

- 26 • British Medical Journal (BMJ) Clinical Evidence
- 27

- 1 • Canadian Medical Association (CMA) Infobase (Canadian guidelines)
- 2 • Clinical Policy and Practice Program of the New South Wales
- 3 Department of Health (Australia)
- 4 • Clinical Practice Guidelines (Australian Guidelines)
- 5 • Cochrane Database of Abstracts of Reviews of Effects (DARE)
- 6 • Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews (CDSR)
- 7 • Embase
- 8 • Guidelines International Network (G-I-N)
- 9 • Health Evidence Bulletin Wales
- 10 • Health Management Information Consortium (HMIC)
- 11 • Health Technology Assessment (HTA)
- 12 • MEDLINE / MEDLINE In-Process
- 13 • National Health and Medical Research Council (NHMRC)
- 14 • National Library for Health (NLH)
- 15 • New Zealand Guidelines Group
- 16 • NHS Centre for Reviews and Dissemination (CRD)
- 17 • OMNI Medical Search
- 18 • Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (SIGN)
- 19 • Turning Research Into Practice (TRIP)
- 20 • United States Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ)
- 21 • Websites of NICE and the National Institute for Health Research
- 22 (NIHR)
- 23 • Health Technology Assessment (HTA) programme for guidelines and
- 24 health technology assessments in development.
- 25

26 *Systematic literature searches*

27 After the review questions were formulated, a systematic search strategy was
28 developed to locate all the relevant evidence.

29
30 Evidence resulting from searches of: (i) existing NICE mental health
31 guidelines for qualitative research and surveys of service user experience; and
32 (ii) survey literature published by the Care Quality Commission informed the
33 evidence base of each review question. Additional searching was undertaken
34 for evidence of interventions as is outlined below.

35 **The search process for the interventions review**

36 Reviews cited by Goodrich and Cornwell (2008) or included in the Cochrane
37 Consumers and Communication Group or the Cochrane Effective Practice
38 and Organisation of Care Group list of reviews were assessed for eligibility.
39 Additionally, the following websites were checked for eligible reviews:

40

- 1 • [Health Issues Centre](#)
- 2 • [The Studer Group](#)
- 3 • [Planetree](#)
- 4 • [The Picker Institute](#)
- 5 • [The Commonwealth Fund](#)
- 6 • [The Schwartz Center](#)
- 7 • [Implementation Science](#)
- 8 • [Canadian Agency for Drugs and Technologies in Health.](#)

9
10 The search strategy used by the most general review of service user focused
11 interventions (Coulter & Ellins, 2006), was updated to identify recent
12 evidence of interventions to improve the experience of care.

13
14 Update searches were restricted to RCTs and observational studies, and
15 conducted in the following bibliographic databases:

- 16
- 17 • Allied and Complementary Medicine Database (AMED)
- 18 • Cochrane Central Register of Controlled Trials (CENTRAL)
- 19 • Cumulative Index to Nursing and Allied Health Literature (CINAHL)
- 20 • Embase
- 21 • MEDLINE / MEDLINE In-Process
- 22 • PsycINFO.

23
24 Search strategies were initially developed for Medline and subsequently
25 translated for use in other databases/search interfaces.

26
27 Full details of the search strategies used in the systematic identification of
28 evidence for questions on interventions are provided in Appendix 7.

29 *Reference Manager*

30 Citations retrieved from database searches were downloaded into Reference
31 Manager (a software product for managing references and formatting
32 bibliographies) and all duplicates removed. Records were subsequently
33 screened against the inclusion criteria of the reviews before being quality
34 appraised. The unfiltered search results were saved and retained for future
35 potential re-analysis to help keep the process both replicable and transparent.

36 *Search filters*

37 The RCT filter utilised in the searches is an adaptation of a filter designed by
38 the Health Information Research Unit of McMaster University, Ontario. The
39 observational study filter was created in-house. Each filter comprises medical
40 subject headings (MeSH), explosions (exp), subheadings (sh), and text words
41 (ti,ab/tw) based on study design features and characteristics.

1 *Date and language restrictions*

2 **For the key problems review**

3 The search of existing NICE mental health guidelines for qualitative research
4 and survey literature published by the Care Quality Commission was
5 conducted in January 2011.

6 **For the interventions review**

7 The search for existing reviews was completed by March 2011. An update
8 search for RCTs and observational studies was conducted in April 2011 up to
9 the most recent searchable date.

10 *Other search methods*

11 Other search methods involved scanning the reference lists of all eligible
12 publications for more published reports and citations of unpublished
13 research. Key papers were also tracked (prospectively) through time for
14 further useful references.

15 *Study selection and quality assessment*

16 Specific eligibility criteria were developed for each review question and are
17 described in Chapters 4 and 12. Eligible systematic reviews and primary-level
18 studies were critically appraised for methodological quality (see Appendix 9
19 for methodology checklists). The eligibility of each study was confirmed by
20 the GDG.

21 **3.6.3 Data abstraction and synthesis**

22 Study characteristics were extracted from all eligible studies and guidelines
23 using Microsoft Word-based forms (see Appendix 8).

24
25 For the key problems review (see Chapter 4), survey results, and where
26 available, benchmark data published by the Care Quality Commission, were
27 entered into Microsoft Excel (see Appendix 11). Key themes from qualitative
28 evidence were abstracted into the matrix of service user experience (see
29 Appendix 12 and 13).

30
31 For the review of interventions, a simplified version of the matrix of service
32 user experience was used to classify each study (see Chapter 12). With regard
33 to the evidence from each study, a narrative description of the key findings
34 relating to the experience of care was drafted by a member of the technical
35 team.

36
37 Consultation with another reviewer or members of the GDG was used to
38 overcome difficulties with coding. Data from studies was extracted by one
39 reviewer and checked by a second reviewer. Disagreements were resolved
40 through discussion. Where consensus could not be reached, a third reviewer

1 or GDG members resolved the disagreement. Masked assessment (that is,
2 blind to the journal from which the article comes, the authors, the institution
3 and the magnitude of the effect) was not used since it is unclear that doing so
4 reduces bias (Jadad *et al.*, 1996; Berlin, 2001).

5 **3.7 KEY REQUIREMENTS FOR THE PROVISION OF** 6 **HIGH QUALITY SERVICE USER EXPERIENCE**

7 Before drafting recommendations, the GDG developed a set of qualitative
8 statements, based on their expert opinion, that set out what they thought
9 would be needed to improve service user experience. These statements were
10 based on discussions held during meetings, as well as feedback between
11 meetings.

12 **3.8 FORMING THE RECOMMENDATIONS**

13 To show clearly how the GDG moved from the evidence (key
14 problems/interventions and key requirements) to the recommendations, each
15 chapter has a section called 'evidence to recommendations'. The strength of
16 each recommendation is reflected in the wording of the recommendation,
17 rather than by using labels or symbols.

18
19 Where the GDG identified areas in which there are uncertainties or where
20 robust evidence was lacking, they developed research recommendations.
21 Those that were identified as 'high-priority' were included in the NICE
22 version of the guidance, and in Appendix 14.

23 **3.9 STAKEHOLDER CONTRIBUTIONS**

24 Professionals, service users, and companies have contributed to and
25 commented on the guidance at key stages in its development. Stakeholders
26 for this guidance include:

- 27
- 28 • service user/carer stakeholders: the national service user and carer
29 organisations that represent people using mental health services
 - 30 • professional stakeholders: the national organisations that represent
31 health care professionals who are providing services to service users
 - 32 • commercial stakeholders: the companies that manufacture medicines
33 and other products used in the treatment of mental health problems
 - 34 • Primary Care Trusts
 - 35 • Department of Health and Welsh Assembly Government.

36 Stakeholders have been involved in the guidance's development at the
37 following points:

- 38
- 39 • commenting on the draft of the guidance
 - 40 • highlighting factual errors in the pre-publication check.

1 **3.10 VALIDATION OF THE GUIDANCE**

2 Registered stakeholders had an opportunity to comment on the draft
3 guidance, which was posted on the NICE website during the consultation
4 period. Following the consultation, all comments from stakeholders and
5 others were responded to, and the guidance updated as appropriate.

6
7 Following the consultation period, the GDG finalised the recommendations
8 and the NCCMH produced the final documents. These were then submitted
9 to NICE for the pre-publication check where stakeholders are given the
10 opportunity to highlight factual errors. Any errors are corrected by the
11 NCCMH, then the guidance is formally approved by NICE and issued as
12 guidance to the NHS in England and Wales.

13

14

15

16

1 4. KEY PROBLEMS - REVIEW

2 PROTOCOL AND SOURCES OF

3 EVIDENCE

4 4.1 INTRODUCTION

5 This chapter provides the review protocol and information about the source
6 of evidence used when reviewing the key problems associated with service
7 users' experience of care. For the purposes of the guidance, qualitative and
8 survey evidence were categorised using a matrix of service user experience
9 (see Chapter 3 for further information). The evidence and associated
10 recommendations relating to each of the key points on the care pathway can
11 be found in subsequent chapters.

12 4.2 REVIEW PROTOCOL (KEY PROBLEMS)

13 The review protocol, including the review questions, information about the
14 search strategy, and the eligibility criteria used for this section of the
15 guidance, can be found in Table 3.

16

Table 3: Review protocol for the review of key problems in current service user experience

Component	Description
Review question	For people who use adult NHS mental health services, what are the key problems associated with their experience of care?
Sub-question	For people who use adult NHS mental health services, what would help improve the experience of care?
Objectives	To identify the key problems in current service user experience of NHS mental health services.
Population	All people who use NHS inpatient and community adult mental health services
Intervention(s)	Inpatient and community adult mental health services.
Comparison	N/A
Critical outcomes	Key problems associated with the experience of care (including examples of poor experience).
Search strategy	Search all existing NICE mental health guidelines for qualitative research and surveys of service user experience (including complaints from service users); search for relevant Care Quality Commission surveys.
Date searched	February 2011.
Study design	Existing analyses and reviews of qualitative evidence and surveys of service user experience.
Review strategy	Narrative synthesis using tabulation and triangulation between sources of evidence.

Note. Problems clearly associated with treatment in primary care were not included, unless they concerned access to treatment in secondary care.

1

2 **4.3 SOURCE OF EVIDENCE (KEY PROBLEMS)**

3 Eight NICE clinical guidelines (NCCMH, 2006; 2008; 2009a; 2009b; 2010a;
4 2011; in press; in preparation) met eligibility criteria. Across these guidelines,
5 there were 133 qualitative studies or reviews of qualitative studies (see Table
6 4, Table 5, Table 6 and Table 7). Also included were qualitative analyses
7 conducted for three guidelines (NCCMH, 2008; 2010a; in press) (see Table 8
8 and Table 9), and one new qualitative analysis conducted for the present
9 guidance (see Table 10). Finally, three surveys (Community Mental Health
10 Survey⁴, Inpatient Service User Survey⁵, The People First survey [Rogers,
11 Pilgrim & Lacey, 1993]) were included (see Table 11).

⁴ <http://www.nhssurveys.org/surveys/511>

⁵ <http://www.nhssurveys.org/surveys/520>

Table 4: Existing guideline reviews of qualitative evidence

Guideline	Alcohol dependence and harmful alcohol use (NCCMH, 2011)	Antisocial personality disorder (NCCMH, 2009a)
Review search parameters		
Databases and websites searched	Medline, EMBASE, PsycINFO, CINAHL	Medline, EMBASE, PsycINFO, CINAHL, HMIC
Years searched	Database inception to March 2010	Database inception to May 2008
Inclusion criteria	Population: People who are alcohol dependent or harmful drinkers, families and carers, staff who work in alcohol services Outcome: Any narrative description of service user/carer experience of alcohol misuse. Study design: Systematic reviews and narratives of qualitative studies, qualitative studies.	Population: People with antisocial personality disorder, psychopathy or personality disorder. Outcome: Qualitative data on the experience of care. Study design: Any quantitative or qualitative primary study.
Included studies		
Number of included studies	N = 33	N = 15
Total number of participants	Not reported	Not reported
Study design	Qualitative primary studies	Quantitative or qualitative primary studies
Country and setting	Not reported	Not reported
Method of analysis		
Brief description of method and process of analysis	Thematic analysis of qualitative studies (not explicitly stated).	Thematic analysis of qualitative studies (not explicitly stated).
Limitations		
Brief description of limitations	Detail of the reviews' method of analysis was limited.	Not clear how many participants were included in the studies and the review overall. Detail of the reviews' method of analysis was limited.

1

1

Table 5: Existing guideline reviews of qualitative evidence

Guideline	Bipolar disorder (NCCMH, 2006)	Borderline personality disorder (NCCMH, 2009b)
Review search parameters		
Databases and websites searched	Not reported	HMIC, Medline, EMBASE, PsycINFO, CINAHL
Years searched	Not reported	Database inception to January 2007 for HMIC; other databases till Aug 2007. Update searches: March 2008/May 2008.
Inclusion criteria	Not reported	Population: People with a diagnosis of personality disorder. Outcome: qualitative data on the experience of care. Study design: qualitative studies, surveys or observational studies.
Included studies		
Number of included studies	N=2	N=10
Total number of participants	Not reported	N=341
Study design	Qualitative primary studies	Qualitative primary studies.
Country and setting	UK	Not reported
Method of analysis		
Brief description of method and process of analysis	Thematic analysis of qualitative studies (not explicitly stated).	Thematic analysis of qualitative studies (not explicitly stated).
Limitations		
Brief description of limitations	The guideline does not specify the methods used for qualitative searching of the literature. It is not certain whether the two studies identified were from a systematic search. The details such as the number of participants and method of qualitative data analysis of the studies was not provided.	The authors noted that the qualitative evidence was limited with regards to the treatments reviewed, with an emphasis on dialectical behaviour therapy (DBT), and very little on therapeutic communities to support the positive statements made in the personal accounts above. The literature on self-harm was not reviewed for this guideline. Detail of the reviews' method of analysis was limited.

2

Table 6: Existing guideline reviews of qualitative evidence

Guideline	Depression update (NCCMH, 2010a)	Drug misuse: psychosocial interventions (NCCMH, 2008)
Review search parameters		
Databases and websites searched	CINAHL, EMBASE, Medline, PsychInfo, HMIC, PsycEXTRA, PsycBOOKS.	Not reported
Years searched	Database inception to February 2009.	Not reported
Inclusion criteria	Population: people with depression and families/carers. Outcome: qualitative data on the experience of care. Study design: systematic reviews of qualitative studies, surveys or observational studies.	Not reported
Included studies		
Number of included studies	Total: N = 3 Systematic review: N = 1 Primary qualitative studies (not included in the systematic review): N = 2	N=11
Total number of participants	Not reported	Not reported
Study design	Qualitative primary studies and systematic reviews.	Qualitative and quantitative studies.
Country and setting	Not reported	Not reported
Method of analysis		
Brief description of method and process of analysis	Thematic analysis of qualitative studies (not explicitly stated).	Thematic analysis of studies (not explicitly stated).
Limitations		
Brief description of limitations	The review included primary qualitative studies but only searched for systematic reviews. This limits the confidence that all relevant primary qualitative studies were identified. Detail of the reviews' method of analysis was limited.	The methods used in the review were not reported including how the studies were identified and the method of analysis.

1

Table 7: Existing guideline reviews of qualitative evidence

Guideline	Psychosis with substance misuse (NCCMH, in press)	Self-harm – longer term management (NCCMH, in preparation)
Review search parameters		
Databases and websites searched	CINAHL, EMBASE, Medline, PsycINFO, HMIC, PsychEXTRA, PsycBOOKS.	CINAHL, EMBASE, Medline, PsycINFO, HMIC, PsychEXTRA, PsycBOOKS.
Years searched	Database inception to 2010	From 2006
Inclusion criteria	Population: People with psychosis and co-existing substance misuse. Outcome: Qualitative data on the experience of psychosis and co-existing substance misuse. Study design: Systematic reviews of qualitative studies, qualitative studies.	Population: People Individuals who self harm by any method in longer term management. Outcome: any narrative description service user experience with self harm. Study design: Systematic reviews of qualitative studies, qualitative studies, observational studies and quantitative studies.
Included studies		
Number of included studies	N=21	Systematic review: N=1 Primary studies: N=33
Total number of participants	Not reported	Not reported
Study design	Qualitative studies.	Qualitative and quantitative studies.
Country and setting	Not reported	Not reported
Method of analysis		
Brief description of method and process of analysis	Thematic analysis of qualitative studies (not explicitly stated).	Thematic analysis of qualitative studies (not explicitly stated).
Limitations		
Brief description of limitations	The author of the review noted several of the included studies had limited description of the methodology and data analysis procedures. In addition, a variety of approaches were used and the population varied across studies. This limited the synthesis of the studies due to the heterogeneity among the included studies. It was not always clear which population the extracted themes was relevant to, making it difficult to assess the generalisability of the finding.	Detail of the reviews' method of analysis was limited.

Table 8: Existing guideline qualitative analyses

Guideline	Depression update (NCCMH, 2010a)	Drug misuse: psychosocial interventions (NCCMH, 2008)
Source of personal accounts		
Websites searched	Healthtalkonline (http://www.healthtalkonline.org)	WIRED website (http://www.wiredinitiative.com/research-addiction.htm)
Year conducted	2008	2006
Inclusion criteria	Personal accounts from people with depression	Not reported
Participants		
Total number of participants	38	Not reported
Country (setting)	UK (any setting)	UK (any setting)
Method of analysis		
Brief description of method and process of analysis	<p>The review team for this guideline used a thematic analysis of interview transcripts to identify emergent themes relevant to the experience of people with depression. From the interviews, the review team identified emergent themes relevant to the experience of people with depression that could inform the guideline. Each transcript was read and re-read, and sections of the text were collected under different headings using a qualitative software program (NVivo). Two reviewers independently coded the data and all themes were discussed to generate a list of the main themes. The anticipated headings included: 'the experience of depression', 'psychosocial interventions', 'pharmacological interventions' and 'healthcare professionals'. The headings that emerged from the data were: 'coping mechanisms', 'accessing help and getting a diagnosis of depression', 'stigma and telling people about depression' and 'electroconvulsive therapy'.</p> <p>The methods adopted by Healthtalkonline to collect interviews were two-fold. First,</p>	The guideline review team took extracts from personal stories on the WIRED website.

	<p>the participants were asked to describe everything that had happened to them since they first suspected a problem. The researchers tried not to interrupt the interviewees in order to have a relatively unstructured, narrative dataset. The second part was a semi-structured interview in which the researcher asked about particular issues that were not mentioned in the unstructured narrative but were of interest to the research team.</p>	
Limitations		
Brief description of limitations	<p>The guideline review team reported that as they relied on transcripts collected by other researchers with their own aims and purposes, information on issues that are particularly pertinent for people with depression that could be used to inform recommendations may not have been collected. Moreover, the review team did not have access to the full interview transcripts and therefore had a selective snapshot of people's experience.</p>	<p>Little information about the method used to extract themes and the number of personal stories used.</p>

1
2

1

Table 9: Existing guideline qualitative analyses

Guideline	Psychosis with substance misuse (NCCMH, in press)
Source of personal accounts	
Websites searched	Healthtalkonline (http://www.healthtalkonline.org/), Dual Recovery Anonymous (http://draonline.org/), Meriden Family Programme (http://www.meridenfamilyprogramme.com/), Talktofrank (http://www.healthtalkonline.org/), Foundations Associates (http://dualdiagnosis.org/), Bipolarworld (http://www.bipolarworld.net/), and Rethink (http://www.rethink.org/)
Year conducted	2009
Inclusion criteria	Personal accounts from people with bipolar disorder, schizophrenia, schizoaffective disorder, or psychotic disorder with coexisting problematic or dependent substance use.
Participants	
Total number of participants	48
Country and setting	Majority from UK, but some from US (any setting)
Method of analysis	
Brief description of method and process of analysis	The guideline review team undertook their own thematic analysis of the narrative accounts to explore emergent themes. Each transcript was read and re-read and sections of the text were collected under different headings using a qualitative software programme (NVivo). Initially, the text from the transcripts was divided by a member of the guideline review team into six broad headings emerging from the data: impact and experience of psychosis and coexisting substance misuse; access and engagement; experience of treatment; carers' perspectives; and support and services. Under these broad headings, specific emergent themes that were identified separately and coded by two researchers. Three GDG members also individually coded the testimonies into emergent themes. Overlapping themes and themes with the highest frequency count across all testimonies were extracted and regrouped under the subsections below.
Limitations	
Brief description of limitations	The guideline review team reported that some of the accounts were written in retrospect, whereas others were written more recently, or in the present. This may have had an impact on the way in which the experiences were recalled; moreover, the accounts cover different time periods which may affect factors such as attitudes, and information and services available.

2

Table 10: Qualitative analysis conducted for service user experience guidance

Guidance	Service user experience
Source of personal accounts	
Website	Healthtalkonline (Healthtalkonline, 2011) (http://www.healthtalkonline.org/mental_health/experiences_of_psychosis)
Year conducted	2010
Inclusion criteria	Personal accounts from people with psychosis (many had received a diagnosis of schizophrenia)
Participants	
Total number of participants	31
Country and setting	UK (any setting)
Method of analysis	
Brief description of method and process of analysis	
Limitations/ notes about the analysis	
Brief description	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Qualitative researchers are usually reluctant to use numbers in the analysis because the sampling strategies typically aim to represent a wide range of perspectives and experiences, rather than to replicate their frequency in the wider population. Thus, even if an experience is relatively rare, we would seek to include it. If we take this approach to collecting the sample it is important that the analysis reflects the diversity of experiences, not just those that are most frequent. This explains why, although some qualitative researchers may use terms such as 'few', 'many' or 'some' in describing their data, they tend to avoid relative frequencies (for example, 54% of our sample liked their doctor, or had a particular side-effect) that would be misleading if they were assumed to apply to the wider population. • Participants in the sample often disagree with each other – and for important reasons – so the key points section at the end of each brief document often contains necessarily contradictory information. This is appropriate and evidence of a diverse sample. • The stories that people told were not organised into discrete events along an easily identifiable 'care pathway'; instead relevant parts have been extracted from the data set as a whole. Whilst this provides relevant information about the experiences of services, a deeper understanding of the data can be gained if they are understood in context.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Related to the above point: this data has been somewhat artificially separated; that is, sometimes access, assessment, referral to inpatient care, and experience of an inpatient unit could happen in a matter of hours and be counted as one event in the context of the stories that people told.• Participants were not always aware of who they were being treated by (primary or secondary care/ different professionals) and whether this intervention was voluntary or compulsory.• Participants were asked about their life histories, and accordingly some data on their experiences of services may not be contemporary, but where this happens it is noted.
--	---

1
2

Table 11: Surveys of mental health service user experience

Guidance	Service user experience
Source of personal accounts	
Website/publication	The People First survey, conducted by MIND (Rogers A, Pilgrim D, Lacey R (1993) <i>Experiencing Psychiatry: User Views of Services</i> . Macmillan/ Mind Publications, London.) Care Quality Commission Surveys: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> National Centre for Social Research (2010) Community Mental Health survey: http://www.nhssurveys.org/surveys/511 Care Quality Commission (2009) Inpatient Service User Survey: http://www.nhssurveys.org/surveys/520
Year conducted	The People First survey: 1990 Community Mental Health survey: 2010 Inpatient Service User Survey: 2009
Inclusion criteria	The People First survey: People who had received at least one period of inpatient treatment in a psychiatric hospital in England and Wales. Community Mental Health survey: Service users aged 16 and over, who had been seen at a NHS Trust between 1 July 2009 and 30 September 2009 and had received specialist care or treatment for a mental health condition. Inpatient Service User Survey: People aged 16-64, who had stayed on an acute ward or a psychiatric intensive care unit (PICU)* for at least 48 hours between 1 July 2008 and 31 December 2008 and were not current inpatients at the time of the survey.
Participants	
Total number of participants	The People First survey: 516 Community Mental Health survey: 17,000 + Inpatient Service User Survey: 7,500 +
Country and setting	UK (any setting)
Method of analysis	
Brief description of method and process of analysis	
Limitations	
Brief description of limitations	
* "Other types of wards were not included in the scope of the survey. This included rehabilitation, secure and specialist units, for example, for people requiring treatments for substance misuse or wards which primarily served people with a learning disability. This is because service provision varies between trusts, and the services received would be very different." (CQC, 2009)	

1 5. ACCESS TO COMMUNITY 2 CARE

3 5.1 INTRODUCTION

4 This chapter provides evidence about the key problems relating to access to
5 community care services, and the key requirements for high quality service
6 user experience. Recommendations for best practice and recommendations
7 for research can be found at the end of the chapter.

8
9 People with mental health problems may seek help, avoid help or, in some
10 cases, not realise that they either could benefit from help or that treatment
11 and help that could be of benefit to them is available. There are probably
12 many other orientations or attitudes towards treatment and help in mental
13 health, or indeed towards physical health. These different attitudes are
14 commonly collapsed into 'treatment seeking' and 'treatment avoidant'. In
15 mental health, people may be treatment avoidant and treatment rejecting, as a
16 result of a lack of insight into their condition, or because the treatments are
17 associated with sometimes severe side effects or because treatment has been
18 regarded as ineffective (NCCMH, 2010b).

19
20 When people seek help, access to effective help will depend upon availability,
21 speed and ease of access, and the direct experience of making contact with a
22 service provider. Moreover, when people are seeking help with their mental
23 health for the first time, the way in which they encounter services will
24 influence the degree to which they engage with services and sustain their
25 engagement in the future. There are many reasons why people experience
26 obstacles to access, including lack of locally effective treatments and long
27 waiting lists (NCCMH, 2011). In addition, many services pay little regard to
28 communication skills, information provision and staff attitudes, all of which
29 will influence the experience at first point of contact and impair the extent and
30 degree of engagement with services and treatment. For people who are
31 'treatment avoidant', these factors become even more important as to whether
32 they will even consider help when relatives or friends encourage potential
33 service users to seek help. For this group, particular efforts on behalf of
34 mental health and social care professionals are required.

35
36 While it is important to ensure services reach out and adapt to all those who
37 are treatment avoidant, as well as ensuring a good experience for those who
38 are treatment seeking, there are particular groups who seek help much less
39 than others. For example, African-Caribbean and some other minority ethnic
40 groups are suspicious of services, and their first direct contact is often
41 experienced as alienating. This is at least partly a result of services not being
42 tailored to the specific needs and orientations of ethnic subgroups, including
43 those who have been shown to have a higher incidence of some serious

1 mental health problems (NCCMH, 2010b, see 5.3). Sadly, experiences of
2 racism, discrimination or simply cultural ignorance or insensitivity, also occur
3 within the health service, including in mental health. The result is that people
4 from African-Caribbean backgrounds, for example, access services much later
5 than many other ethnic groups, and are, therefore, over-represented within
6 crisis services and subject to compulsion more often than others (NCCMH,
7 2010b, 5.3.6).

8 *Current practice*

9 Following the closure of the old asylums, the development of community
10 psychiatry was an unplanned reaction to the absence of services for
11 significant numbers in the population, except in-patient units within general
12 hospitals. With high rates of re-admission, often reaching 70% or more,
13 community mental health teams were developed to help maintain people in
14 the community. Mental health services have since tried to improve access to
15 most groups with varying degrees of success. New teams have been
16 developed as a result of the National Service Framework (DH, 1999). For
17 example, to provide more assertive community-based care for people who are
18 often treatment avoidant, the NSF led to the widespread development of
19 teams, such as Assertive Community Treatment (also known as Assertive
20 Outreach) Teams. Other teams aimed to provide treatment at home, to
21 promote engagement and to avoid admission to hospital (Crisis Resolution
22 and Home Treatment Teams; CRHT). And still others were designed to
23 improve those early and formative experiences of services for people with
24 psychosis, experiences that can prefigure entrenched negative attitudes to
25 service. In addition, these Early Intervention Services (EISs), it was hoped,
26 would be particularly engaging for ethnic subgroups (NCCMH, 2010b).

27
28 There is evidence now, that CRHTs do reduce dependence on in patient units
29 and probably improve access to services in a crisis. There is also evidence that
30 EISs are effective and preferred to other services, which may improve
31 engagement and readiness to access services (NCCMH, 2010b). However,
32 evidence for any of these community services specifically improving access or
33 engagement for people from minority ethnic groups is equivocal, lacking or
34 negative (NCCMH, 2010b). Nevertheless, wherever comparisons with
35 inpatient units have been made, most of these services, as well as day
36 hospitals and crisis houses, are preferred (Johnson, *et al.* 2010) and are likely
37 to improve access for some groups.

38 **5.2 KEY PROBLEMS REGARDING ACCESS**

39 Evidence from qualitative reviews/analyses and surveys addressed the
40 following domains of person-centred care:

- 41
- 42 • involvement in decisions and respect for preferences
 - 43 • clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care
 - 44 • emotional support, empathy and respect

- 1 • fast access to reliable health advice
2 • effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals.

3

4 No evidence was identified that directly addressed:

5

- 6 • attention to physical and environmental needs.
7 • involvement of, and support for, family and carers
8 • continuity of care and smooth transitions.

9

10 For the purposes of the review, themes from the qualitative evidence are
11 summarised only briefly here, with further details provided in Appendix 12.

12 Domains and sources of evidence without themes are not listed below.

13 **5.2.1 Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences**

14 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

15 **Barrier: information**

16 One study found that a barrier to accessing services was due to the mismatch
17 between how information was offered and how people with depression prefer
18 to seek information:

19

20 *I would never sit down and read something about medicine. It has never*
21 *interested me. I learned more from watching that commercial on television.*
22 (Depression update guideline [NCCMH, 2010a])

23

24 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

25 **Facilitator: longer time to speak about problems**

26 Service users expressed wanting to have more time to speak about their
27 problems which were often complex, and not be given pills and 'sent home':

28

29 *He [the GP] asked me what was going on in my head, and I said, "I had*
30 *thoughts in the third person, like voices in my head telling me stuff." And he*
31 *said, "Had I been taking drugs and stuff?" I said, "Just smoking weed." And*
32 *he said, I hadn't been... I can't remember what he said now. He said*
33 *something else as well. And then he prescribed me some anti-psychotic*
34 *medications, as well as a sleeping pill, and anti-anxiety pills as well. [***]*

35

36 I: So what was this first doctor like?

37

38 R: He was all right, but I don't think he actually had that much time.
39 Compared to doctor I've got now, because the surgery I went to before,
40 obviously had like more people to cover. And they seemed like in a rush, they
41 weren't, like, as bothered in my opinion as the ones that I see now.
42 (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])

1 **5.2.2 Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-**
2 **care**

3 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

4 **Barrier: information**

5 The qualitative analysis found that a key problem regarding access to services
6 was due to the provision of information. Service users described that it was
7 not uncommon that there was a lack of information being offered on
8 treatment facilities available to them (Drug misuse guideline [NCCMH,
9 2008]).

10 **5.2.3 Emotional support, empathy and respect**

11 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

12 **Barrier: professionals**

13 Across three guidelines professionals were viewed as a barrier to accessing
14 services (Alcohol guideline [NCCMH, 2011]; Depression Update guideline
15 [NCCMH, 2010a]; Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in preparation]). In the
16 Alcohol guideline, two studies described the experience of women when
17 accessing services and found that when they sought help from professionals
18 they were denied access, treated poorly or silenced (Alcohol guideline
19 [NCCMH, 2011]); and found in another guideline that healthcare
20 professionals were unresponsive (Depression Update guideline [NCCMH,
21 2010a]). In order to access services, service users' described how confidence
22 and trust were important in order to seek help but how they would not ask
23 strangers for help or support including professionals:

24
25 *If there would be someone with whom I have no trusting relation I would of*
26 *course not allow a touch, I would not say a word, I would not show a feeling.*
27 *Nothing! Only someone I trust.* (Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in
28 preparation])

29 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

30 **Facilitator: professional**

31 Many service users in one quantitative analysis described how difficult it was
32 to access help when they were very distressed and the role of the healthcare
33 professional to facilitate and improve experience of care. For example, one
34 service users described the 'courage' it took to see his GP when he had cut his
35 wrists. He was spotted by reception staff who took him straight to the doctor
36 who was 'very warm' when he couldn't manage to speak (Experiences of
37 psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011]).

1 **5.2.4 Fast access to reliable health advice**

2 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

3 The qualitative reviews in four guidelines highlighted service users'
4 preferences to accessing fast and reliable health advice, for example by using
5 a telephone service. The ability to self-refer was seen positively (Alcohol
6 guideline [NCCMH, 2011]; ASPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009a]; BPD guideline
7 [NCCMH, 2009b]; Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in preparation]).

8 **Barrier:**

9 Long waiting lists and being passed from one service to another before
10 getting the right intervention were seen as barriers to accessing care (BPD
11 guideline, [NCCMH, 2009b]).

12 **Preference: GPs**

13 Preferences to fast access to reliable health advice included access to services
14 via a GP to discuss alcohol-related problems (and to deliver brief
15 interventions) but a referral to a specialist when the problem could not be
16 treated in primary care (Alcohol guideline [NCCMH, 2011])

17 **Preference: psychiatric emergency services**

18 Another preference included access to services via A&E that had a separate
19 psychiatric emergency service (ASPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009a]).

20 **Preference: phone or crisis team**

21 Service users also expressed wanting fast immediate support through the use
22 of telephone services or (ideally) 24-hour crisis intervention teams with
23 specific training and expertise in personality disorders, with a range of service
24 options to choose from and access at different times such as one-to-one
25 sessions, out-of-hours phone support, crisis beds and an open clinic. The
26 ability to self-refer was seen as beneficial (BPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]).

27 **Preference: greater accessibility**

28 A similar theme was found in the self-harm guideline where across two
29 studies service users described their preference for more accessible services by
30 including 24-hour staff, walk-in services, minimal waiting times, central
31 location and telephone access (Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in
32 preparation]).

33 **Facilitator: crisis care**

34 One study suggested that prompt and improved access to crisis care in early
35 phases of acute relapse is needed in the community to avoid admission to
36 hospital:
37

1 *...everything should be done to avoid hospital: the staff there are generally not*
2 *interested and offer virtually no psychological support. The experience is*
3 *traumatic and one's stay tends to be prolonged. (Bipolar disorder guideline*
4 *[NCCMH, 2006])*
5

6 One service user benefited from intensive community psychiatric nurse
7 (CPN) home support and a relapse prevention plan (Bipolar disorder
8 guideline [NCCMH, 2006]).

9 **Facilitator: alternatives**

10 Other improvements to community care suggested by service users were an
11 out-of-hours service and a safe house and an advocate service and helpline
12 (BPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]).

13 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

14 **Barriers: service (waiting list)**

15 Two qualitative analyses found that a barrier to accessing services was due to
16 the prolonged waiting times when being referred to services and the limited
17 resources available (Depression Update guideline [NCCMH, 2010a]; Drug
18 misuse guideline [NCCMH, 2008]).

19
20 Service users with depression raised issues regarding referral, waiting lists
21 and accessing NHS services. Some people said that that they waited too long
22 to be referred to a psychiatrist or receive psychotherapy. One person said that
23 while she was on a waiting list she was unable to cope with her depression:

24
25 *I was referred to the psychiatric hospital for assessment. Although I think it*
26 *probably took about two months I believe between the initial sort of GP's*
27 *referring letter and getting an appointment. Which again in retrospect was, was*
28 *way, way too long, way too long. I was really, really ill and barely coping.*
29 *(Depression Update guideline [NCCMH, 2010a])*
30

31 This was also expressed in the Drug misuse qualitative review where service
32 users expressed concern over the delay in accessing treatment and how this
33 can lead to criminal behaviour, return to drug misuse and can have a negative
34 impact on seeking further treatment (Drug misuse guideline [NCCMH,
35 2008]). The use of violence to access services was described by a service user
36 with depression as her only resort in order to be referred to NHS services:

37
38 *It's very difficult to get a hospital bed for quite severe mental illness. You've*
39 *got to be suicidal . . . I was feeling suicidal. I was also quite violent at times. I*
40 *mean in my own doctor's surgery, I swept all the things off his desk you know*
41 *. . . there was a part of me, kind of watching what I was doing . . . saying,*
42 *'Right, well make it really dramatic.' I wasn't pretending exactly, but I knew I*
43 *had to make a song and dance to get heard. (Depression Update Guideline*
44 *[NCCMH, 2010a])*

1
2 Due to the strain on resources and limited spaces available in different
3 treatment settings, some service users with drug misuse problems
4 experienced being turned away from services:
5

6 *I really thought I was going to get off it, but I was told that I was going to*
7 *have to wait a month for an appointment. When I went for that appointment*
8 *they said I wasn't on it too badly so there wasn't a rush for me to be seen; it*
9 *was going to take over 6 months. (Drug misuse guideline [NCCMH,*
10 *2008])*

11 **Barrier: medication**

12 Prescriptions not being available at the right time were a barrier to accessing
13 medication (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011]).

14 **Barrier: Professional**

15 One person was discouraged by primary care staff from seeing a mental
16 health professional (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011]).

17 *Evidence from surveys*

18 The Community Mental Health Survey (National Centre for Social Research,
19 2010) (see Chapter 4 for further information about the survey) had four
20 questions relevant to the domain of 'fast access to reliable health advice' (see
21 Appendix 11 for full results). On a national level, of those survey respondents
22 who knew who their care co-ordinator (or lead professional) was, most (74%)
23 could always contact their care co-ordinator if they had a problem, but 22%
24 answered 'sometimes' and 4% answered 'no'. The benchmark data indicate
25 that there was a relatively small variation in performance between trusts.
26 However, across all service users, 44% did not have the number of someone
27 from their local NHS Mental Health Service that they could phone out of
28 hours, and the benchmark data indicate wide variation in performance
29 between trusts. Of those who had called the out of office number, the majority
30 (66%) got through immediately, but half only got help to some extent (32%) or
31 not at all (18%). The benchmarking data suggested relatively wide variation
32 between trusts.

33 **5.2.5 Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals**

34 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

35 **Barrier: lack of support as caregiver**

36 One study found that female service users with mental health and coexisting
37 substance misuse problems described reduced access to services when there
38 was no available child care (PSM guideline [NCCMH, in press]).

39 **Facilitator: lack of access to psychologists**

1 Many service users in one study reported that they had little access to
2 psychologists:

3

4 *...pushed for some counselling but was made to feel like I was asking for a pot*
5 *of gold by the hospital psychiatrist. (Bipolar disorder [NCCMH, 2006])*

6 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

7 **Barrier: professionals**

8 Some service users reported that they did not receive adequate help when
9 trying to access services:

10

11 *I went to every doctor's . . . everywhere. But we're smack heads, "See the door,*
12 *close it on the way out, fuck off". That's all we got . . . them days . . . I was*
13 *asking for methadone, that was all. I wasn't asking for valies [valium] or*
14 *temazies [temazepam] or anything. . . You get sick of asking for help and not*
15 *getting any. (Drug misuse guideline [NCCMH, 2008])*

16

17 Service users described not being given help when it was needed during the
18 first stages of being assessed for severe mental illness:

19

20 *I was about 27, [um] I realised something was going drastically wrong and I*
21 *picked up the phone to my then GP and said, "I think I need to be in hospital.*
22 *A psychiatric hospital." It's quite a renowned psychiatric hospital in this*
23 *area. And her response to that was, "Well what do you want to go there for?"*
24 *And that was the limit of the help I got from the GP at that time.*

24

(Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])

25 **5.2.6 Other themes (including stigma)**

26 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

27 **Barrier: stigma**

28 Service users in one study described stigma as another barrier to seeking help
29 due to the concern of disclosing to others about self-harm because of fear that
30 others would not understand them and fear of being labelled (Self-harm
31 guideline [NCCMH, in preparation]).

32 **Barrier: stigma of diagnosis**

33 Two barriers to accessing effective treatment delivered by trusted
34 professionals was due to the stigma associated with their diagnosis as seeking
35 help may '*threaten an already weakened sense of self*' (Depression Update
36 [NCCMH, 2010a]).

37 **Barrier: stigma of diagnosis**

38 Service users in three guidelines found that the stigma associated with their
39 diagnosis was a barrier to accessing help (Bipolar guideline [NCCMH, 2006];

1 BPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]; PSM guideline [NCCMH, in press])
2 however a minority in two qualitative reviews viewed the opposite (BPD
3 guideline[NCCMH, 2009b]; PSM guideline [NCCMH, in press]). For example,
4 in one qualitative review, service users described how the stigma associated
5 with mental illness was a barrier to them accessing services and ultimately
6 receiving a diagnosis and treatment for their condition:

7
8 *'I was 42 before I was diagnosed. I first became aware I was suffering severe*
9 *mood swings as a young child. I can only ever remember being either very*
10 *happy or very sad. When low I wished I'd never been born. My dad had also*
11 *always suffered severe mood swings throughout my childhood and spent long*
12 *spells in hospital, but I was told it was for treatment for a 'heart attack'. My*
13 *parents felt such shame about his mental illness they never told me about it, and*
14 *they never told me their suspicions about my illness. It was only when I broke*
15 *the news about my diagnosis more than 20 years later that they said they 'had*
16 *always known'. I felt quite angry really that they'd never said something earlier.*
17 *If I had been diagnosed earlier I would have got the right treatment earlier.'*
18 (Bipolar guideline [NCCMH, 2009b])

19
20 Another service user described how the stigma associated with their
21 diagnosis hindered their recovery:

22
23 *'It makes you feel bad... it makes you feel even worse... when people don't trust*
24 *you and think you're going to do something to someone.'* (PSM guideline
25 [NCCMH, in press])

26
27 However, a minority expressed the positive aspects of their diagnosis and
28 how it accurately described their experience:

29
30 *'I feel that if I survive it I've been through a very privileged experience and that*
31 *I can actually make something of it...'* (PSM guideline [NCCMH, in press])
32

33 **Barrier: stigma of services**

34 Service users in two guidelines found that the stigma associated with seeking
35 help and receiving treatment was a barrier to accessing help (Alcohol
36 guideline [NCCMH, 2011]; Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in preparation])
37 including the stigma associated with receiving treatment by specialists as it
38 was perceived that you had a severe alcohol problem (Alcohol guideline
39 [NCCMH, 2011]).

40 **Barrier: attitudes**

41 Another barrier to accessing services was the stigma and attitudes towards
42 seeking help. A minority in one study included in the qualitative review on
43 self-harm, viewed seeking help as unacceptable. These views were echoed in
44 other study where service users viewed themselves as strong enough to

1 handle the problem on their own; or that the problem would resolve itself; or
2 that no one could help (Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in preparation]).

3 **Barrier: lack of motivation**

4 Another barrier to accessing help was the lack of motivation characteristic of
5 the depression itself (Depression Update [NCCMH, 2010a]). This barrier was
6 also found in the Drug Misuse guideline (NCCMH, 2008):

7

8 *'You have to actually seek treatment. It's up to them if they want to start...If a*
9 *person's not ready, they're not ready.'*

10

11 **Improvement: education**

12 Service users in one study felt that a way to reduce the stigma of their
13 diagnosis and seeking help which acted as barriers to accessing services was
14 to provide more education about mental health difficulties in schools, to
15 educate about vulnerability and to teach students how to seek appropriate
16 help if they are experiencing difficulties themselves (BPD guideline [NCCMH,
17 2009b]).

18 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

19 **Barrier: fear of involving social services**

20

21 For some service users the obstacle to accessing treatment was fear of
22 involving social services with regard to their children:

23

24 *'I used to work around the children so that I could pick them up from school*
25 *and make dinner and things like that . . . I was worried what would happen to*
26 *the children if I went to get help . . . so I just stayed on it, so I could get up in*
27 *the morning and get the kids to school.'* (Drug misuse guideline [NCCMH,
28 2008])

29

30 **Barrier: stigma of diagnosis**

31 As found in the qualitative review, many online accounts, from both service
32 users and carers, highlighted the experience of interacting with others in the
33 community and the stigma that their dual diagnoses carried. The experience
34 of stigma often elicited feelings of shame, embarrassment, and frustration:

35

36 *'When we go out there in the community people might know you have got a*
37 *mental health problem, you might not look different to the, but they know you*
38 *have got that. There is a stigma against it and a discrimination taboo..because*
39 *of the label, and because of what it stands for. Which is people don't*
40 *understand.'* (PSM guideline [NCCMH, in press])

41

1 **Barrier: stigma of diagnosis/cultural issues**

2 One theme that emerged in several testimonies was that access to care was
3 more difficult for those coming from a black or minority ethnic (BME) group
4 or a different cultural background. Factors that affected access to care for BME
5 groups were a fear of accessing treatment due to the conceptualisation of
6 mental illness in their home country or native culture, or fear of stigma.

7
8 *'Well people look at you differently if you say you've got a mental health*
9 *problem back home. They don't treat you the same. I think now it's changed*
10 *but that, when I was there it was different...'* (PSM guideline [NCCMH, in
11 press])
12

13 **Barrier: fear of contacting services**

14 A significant number of factors affected accessing services, including fear of
15 contacting a healthcare professional about substance misuse, and uncertainty
16 about how to begin accessing treatment or who to contact.

17
18 *'And I did ask somebody from my mental health team if it was possible to have*
19 *like a social worker and she said no, she didn't know how I would access that. I*
20 *asked my doctor the same thing she didn't know how I would access anything*
21 *like that so it just leaves you vulnerable.'* (PSM guideline [NCCMH, in
22 press])
23

24 **Barrier/facilitator: social networks**

25 Many participants described how their social networks facilitated or
26 impinged on accessing care or treatment (PSM guideline [NCCMH, in press]).

27 **Barrier/facilitator: initial contact**

28 The first time people accessed mental health services, or spoke about their
29 mental health, often had an influence on their engagement with services after
30 that (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011]).

31 **5.2.7 Evidence summary**

32 Below is a summary of the evidence found for the key problems associated
33 with access to care, categorised according to the dimensions of person-centred
34 care.

35 *Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences*

36 The qualitative evidence suggested that service users' preference for types of
37 information may not match how information is offered, which can act as a
38 barrier to accessing services. Furthermore, limited time and healthcare
39 professional understanding in primary care act as a barrier.

1 *Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care*

2 The qualitative evidence suggested that a lack of information acts as a barrier
3 to accessing services.

4 *Emotional support, empathy and respect*

5 The qualitative evidence suggested that a key problem regarding access was
6 professionals who did not display emotional support, empathy and respect
7 which acted as a barrier to accessing services. Healthcare professionals who
8 demonstrated support and qualities of empathy and respect could facilitate
9 access.

10 *Fast access to reliable health advice*

11 The qualitative evidence suggested that long waiting lists for mental
12 healthcare and being passed from one service to another were barriers to
13 accessing services. A preference was shown for self-referral and fast access to
14 health advice through, for example, a telephone service. In addition,
15 improved access to crisis care in early phases of acute relapse is needed in the
16 community to avoid admission to hospital.

17
18 The survey results suggest that many service users do not have the phone
19 number of someone from their local NHS Mental Health Service that they can
20 contact out of hours. In addition, more could be done to help those that do
21 contact services out of hours.

22 *Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals*

23 The qualitative evidence suggests that getting access to secondary care
24 healthcare professionals can be difficult, and no child care services can stop
25 service users accessing mental healthcare.

26 **5.3 KEY REQUIREMENTS FOR THE PROVISION OF**
27 **HIGH QUALITY SERVICE USER EXPERIENCE**

28 The key requirements (qualitative statements based on the GDG's expert
29 opinion) for the provision of high quality service user experience for access to
30 care are shown in Table 12.

31

Table 12. Key requirements for the provision of high quality service user experience (access to care).

Dimensions of person-centred care	Statement
Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service user preferences should be considered when offering appointments, including requirements under the Equality Act 2010.
Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users will be able to understand and use information which will support them. The range and type of information produced will vary according to the range of service users' needs

	<p>and capacities. (This includes educational, developmental and language needs). Professionals will be trained to assess and match service users to information and support which will have meaning and be relevant for the individual service user. Professionals will need to review their assessments regularly and respond to service users' changing needs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Secondary care mental health services should give information to primary care services (GPs) so they are able to pass it onto the service users. This should include information on the mental health service, what will happen at the appointment etc. This should include who the person will be seen by, and their role, when they go to the mental health service. • Various formats should be used to contact services users such as emails, texts, phone calls etc. not just letters. Services should establish/agree how the service user would prefer to be contacted. • Service users should be sent a copy of the referral letter. • Healthcare professionals should be easily recognisable.
Emotional support, empathy and respect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users will be treated in a respectful way at all times. It is the duty of the professional to make the effort and to employ other resources where necessary (trained Mental Health Interpreters for example) in order to understand Service users' world views, life experiences and immediate needs for safety.
Fast access to reliable health advice	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users should be able to have fast/24 hour access to reliable health advice and interventions which they understand and which meet their perceived needs for safety. A range of containing interventions should be available if there is any waiting period for an appointment, including trained and supervised reception staff (face to face or by telephone) help lines, texting services etc. • Support and health and social care professionals, trusted by the Service user, should be able to refer directly into secondary care.
Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Treatment offered should be appropriate for the individual service user and delivered by a professional the service user trusts. If the service user does not trust the allocated professional, the professional should cease working with the service user and a professional whom the service user trusts needs to be found within a reasonable time period. • Service users should be contacted by secondary care services within a week of being referred by primary care. • People in crisis should be seen within 4 hours.
Attention to physical and environmental needs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Access should be available from settings which are appropriate for service users. These may include community settings such as community centres and libraries.
Involvement of, and support for, family and carers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Families and carers' support needs should be identified at the earliest opportunity and appropriate services should be involved where requested. • Fully qualified and trained mental health interpreters should always be used. • Family and carers should not normally be used for interpreting purposes as this could compromise their relationship with the service user and the service user's right to confidentiality. •
Continuity of care and smooth transitions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users should be involved in and kept informed at every point of a transition or referral to another service. The referring

	professional is wholly responsible for the service user's care until the referral has been acknowledged and a first session with the referrer has been delivered.
--	---

1

2 **5.4 EVIDENCE TO RECOMMENDATIONS**

3 The key problems outlined in the qualitative reviews, analyses and surveys
4 highlighted a wide range of issues. These included the following: limited time
5 with healthcare professionals to discuss problems, incorrect or inadequate
6 information about treatment options and facilities, a lack of rapport with
7 professionals, long waiting lists, lack of continuity of care and limited NHS
8 resources, including childcare and access to secondary healthcare
9 professionals. Another barrier to accessing community care highlighted by
10 service users was the stigma and negative attitudes associated with their
11 diagnosis and treatment. In particular, access to community care was found
12 more difficult for BME groups due to stigma and cultural issues. Finally, the
13 evidence highlighted the requirement for improved access to crisis care.

14

15 The GDG articulated a number of goals for improving the access to
16 community care in mental health services. Some of the more fundamental
17 targets for improvement included the following: the provision of
18 comprehensive information about how mental health services can be accessed
19 matched to the needs, preferences, language and understanding of the
20 individual; communication and involvement amongst professionals and
21 service users at all steps of the care pathway; treating service users with
22 respect; and finally the provision of treatment that is person-centred and
23 delivered by a trusted professional. Some other key requirements were
24 aspirational in nature, such as access to 24 hour health advice and
25 interventions, secondary care services contacting service users within a week
26 of referral from primary care, and finally the provision of fully qualified and
27 trained mental health interpreters.

28

29 On reviewing the key problems and requirements the guidance group
30 identified a number of broad issues that relate to all points on the care
31 pathway, but were of particular importance to access to community care. The
32 recommendations for these aspects of the experience of care included the
33 following: building supportive, empathic and non-judgemental relationships
34 with service users; ensuring the provision of comprehensible verbal and
35 written information in the appropriate language or format about the nature,
36 treatments, and services for their mental health problems including relevant
37 'Understanding NICE Guidance', and finally, acknowledging stigma and
38 respecting service users' diverse cultural, ethnic and religious backgrounds.
39 Finally, trust boards should develop a strategy with all other local
40 organisations to combat the stigma associated with mental health problems
41 and using mental health services, both within the community and in the NHS.

1 All these issues were placed in care across all points on the care pathway in
2 the NICE guidance.

3

4 Areas identified by the guidance group of particular importance for
5 improving the access to community care included the following: receiving a
6 copy of the referral letter when it is sent to mental health services, being
7 offered an appointment within 2 weeks of the date of referral, providing
8 comprehensive information about the assessment such as the name of the
9 professional who will assess them, information about the mental health
10 service and the process of assessment amongst other things. Finally, mental
11 health services should establish close working relationships with primary care
12 services and voluntary organisations to enhance accessibility of mental health
13 services.

1 **5.5 RECOMMENDATIONS**

2 **5.5.1 Practice recommendations relating specifically to access**

3 **5.5.1.1** When people are referred to mental health services, ensure that:

- 4 • they are given or sent a copy of the referral letter when this
- 5 is sent to mental health services
- 6 • they are offered an appointment with mental health services
- 7 within 2 weeks of referral and are informed that they can
- 8 change the date and time of the appointment if they wish
- 9 • any change in appointment does not result in a delay of
- 10 more than 2 weeks. [QS6]

11 **5.5.1.2** When people are sent an appointment letter for mental health services

12 it should:

- 13 • give the name and professional designation of the person
- 14 who will assess them
- 15 • include information about the service including a website
- 16 address, and different options about how to get to there
- 17 • explain the process of assessment using plain language
- 18 • specify all the information needed for the assessment,
- 19 including about current medication
- 20 • address the likely anxiety and concern often experienced by
- 21 people attending mental health services for assessment
- 22 • explain that although they can be accompanied by a family
- 23 member, carer or advocate if they wish for all or part of the
- 24 time, it is preferable to see the person alone for some of the
- 25 assessment
- 26 • ask if they will need an interpreter, or have any hearing,
- 27 sight or speech problems, a learning disability or any
- 28 disability access requirements
- 29 • give a number to ring if they have problems getting to the
- 30 appointment or wish to change it.
- 31

32 **5.5.1.3** Mental health services should establish close working relationships

33 with primary care services to ensure:

- 34 • agreed processes for referral, consistent with 1.2.1, are in
- 35 place, and
- 36 • primary care professionals can provide information about
- 37 local mental health and social care services to the people
- 38 they refer. [QS6]
- 39

40 **5.5.1.4** Local mental health services should work with primary care and local

41 voluntary organisations to ensure that:

- 1 • people with mental health problems from black and
2 minority ethnic groups have the same access to services as
3 other service users based on clinical need
4 • services are culturally appropriate. [QS2]
5

6 **5.5.1.5** Take into account the requirements of the Equality Act 2010 and make
7 sure services are equally accessible to, and supportive of, all people
8 using mental health services.

9 **5.5.2 Practice recommendations relating to access and all points**
10 **on the pathway**

11 **5.5.2.1 Avoiding stigma and promoting social inclusion** Trust boards should
12 work with all other local organisations with an interest in mental
13 health (including social services, other hospitals, voluntary
14 organisations, local press and media) to develop a strategy to combat
15 the stigma in the community and in the NHS associated with mental
16 health problems and using mental health services,.

17 **5.5.3 Research recommendations**

18 What is the impact of training local minority ethnic
19 organisations/associations in the recognition of mental health
20 problems in their own communities and what basic interventions
21 would enhance engagement with mental health services? This should
22 include training the local mental health service (CMHT) in cultural
23 competence appropriate to the local ethnic groups.

24 **5.5.3.1** For people using adult mental health services, what are the personal
25 and demographic factors associated with late access to services and
26 an increased likelihood of compulsory and intensive treatment, and
27 what are the key themes that are associated with poor engagement?

28
29
30
31

1

2 **6. ASSESSMENT (NON-ACUTE)**

3 **6.1 INTRODUCTION**

4 This chapter provides evidence about the key problems relating to
5 assessment, and the key requirements for high quality service user
6 experience. Recommendations for best practice and recommendations for
7 research can be found at the end of the chapter.

8

9 Timely, comprehensive assessments conducted by appropriately trained
10 health and social care professionals are vital to ensure that the right care and
11 treatment can be planned for individual service users. It has been
12 acknowledged in other guidance that mental health assessments should be
13 more than a simple symptom count (for further information, see the updated
14 edition of the Depression guideline, [NCCMH 2010a]). Consideration should
15 also be given to the need for a formal Community Care Assessment under the
16 NHS and Community Care Act (HMSO, 1990). Moreover, the Department of
17 Health (DH, 2011) has emphasised the need for more stream-lined mental
18 health assessments.

19

20 Mental health assessments can vary; this might be an appointment with a GP,
21 an assessment at ones home or local service by a recognised mental health
22 professional or an assessment in Accident and Emergency department. It may
23 be necessary for an appointment with a specialist at a hospital.

24

25 Good practice dictates that health and social care professionals should have
26 the knowledge, skills and attitudes to assess service users in a sensitive and
27 professional manner. It is essential that the professional makes every effort to
28 build a trusting, respectful and empowering therapeutic relationship with the
29 service user. It is important that anyone conducting an assessment tries to
30 make sure that the service user's experience of their assessment is positive
31 and that they feel valued and listened to during the process.

32

33 Mental health assessments are conducted for different reasons depending on
34 the service user, this may be to provide a diagnosis, to develop a
35 psychological formulation and identify aspirations, strengths and needs, for
36 screening purposes (including risk assessments) and to evaluate treatment
37 outcomes (NICE, 2009b). Assessments should be culturally sensitive (NICE,
38 2009b) and reflect the context of the service user's life; and their physical,
39 family, social and environmental needs. Assessments will focus on the service
40 user's mental health and also take into consideration any family, social or
41 work related responsibilities. During the assessment, professionals should try
42 to instil the principles of hope and recovery. Other guidance has emphasised
43 the need for service users to be partners in the assessment process and

1 outcomes of the assessment should reflect both the assessor's and service
2 user's concerns (NICE, 2009b).

3
4 Assessments should, wherever possible take place in a safe and suitable
5 location and at a time chosen by the service user. If this is not possible, the
6 privacy, dignity and confidentiality must be considered in relation to the
7 service user.

8
9 Other NICE guidance suggests that relevant standardised assessment tools
10 should be used (NICE, 2009a). Such tools aid diagnosis and treatment
11 planning, monitoring and evaluation. A careful clinical judgement by the
12 assessor decides which is the most appropriate and whether the time is right
13 to conduct such assessments.

14
15 New guidance endorses the need for a whole family assessment and
16 necessary support plans (Department of Health, 2011). This includes an
17 assessment of the family or carer's own mental, physical and caring
18 responsibilities (NICE, 2009b, NICE, 2006).

19
20 There are a number of potential problems that may arise during mental health
21 assessments. Service users may find it difficult to participate and provide
22 accurate self-report at the time of the assessment due to their levels of distress
23 or symptoms. It is possible that information will need to be gained from the
24 service user's family or carer, other professionals involved in their care or
25 documentation reports by others.

26 **6.2 KEY PROBLEMS REGARDING ASSESSMENT**

27 Evidence from qualitative reviews/analyses and surveys addressed the
28 following domains of person-centred care:

- 29
- 30 • involvement in decisions and respect for preferences
 - 31 • clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care
 - 32 • emotional support, empathy and respect
 - 33 • fast access to reliable health advice
 - 34 • effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals

35
36 No evidence was identified that directly addressed:

- 37
- 38 • attention to physical and environmental needs.
 - 39 • involvement of, and support for, family and carers
 - 40 • continuity of care and smooth transitions.

41 For the purposes of the review, themes from the qualitative evidence are
42 summarised only briefly here, with further details provided in Appendix 12.
43 Domains and sources of evidence without themes are not listed below.

1 **6.2.1 Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences**

2 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

3 **Barrier: lack of transparency**

4 One guideline found that there was a lack of transparency in the assessment
5 process as 16% of services users found out about their diagnosis from their
6 records (half found out from a psychiatrist) which increased their feelings of
7 stigma associated with their diagnosis (ASPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009a]).

8 **Barrier: lack of time and involvement**

9 Service users also expressed their disappointment when the assessor did not
10 give them sufficient time to talk during the assessment and involve them in
11 the process:

12

13 *O.K. The first interview was just "so tell us what happened" and he wrote it*
14 *up and said "um hm, um hm" and wrote notes and he didn't look at me but he*
15 *was nodding and looking at the other guy. And they looked at each other and*
16 *exchanged nods. It was very factual like "So what did you take?" and "What*
17 *happened at the house?" Um, you know I felt like saying "I can understand*
18 *English, doctor". It was just very factual. They filled out their little form and*
19 *that was it. (Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in preparation])*

20 *Evidence from surveys*

21 The Community Mental Health Survey (National Centre for Social Research,
22 2010) (see Chapter 4 for further information about the survey) had four
23 questions relevant to the domain of 'involvement in decisions and respect for
24 preferences' (see Appendix 11 for full results). Taken together, the survey
25 results suggest that during assessment, many service users are not being
26 involved in decisions and having their preferences respected. For instance,
27 nearly half thought their views were not (13%) or only to some extent (34%)
28 taken into account when deciding what was in their care plan. Furthermore,
29 26% were not given a chance to talk to their care coordinator before the
30 review meeting about what would happen during the meeting. At the review
31 meeting, 4% were not given a chance to express their views, and 25%
32 answered 'yes, to some extent'. Finally, many were not (18%) or only to some
33 extent (21%) given the chance to discuss whether they needed to continue
34 using mental health services. The benchmark data indicate that there was
35 considerable variation in performance between trusts on some questions, and
36 all trusts have room to improve.

37 **6.2.2 Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-** 38 **care**

39 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

1 In two guidelines, information was perceived as an important component in
2 the assessment process (BPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]; Self-harm guideline
3 [NCCMH, in preparation]). Some service users felt that a barrier to
4 assessment was the lack of information provided about their diagnosis.
5 Service users stated that they had little information, negative information,
6 unclear information or in some instances, were not even disclosed about their
7 diagnosis, or did not know what the term BPD meant (BPD guideline
8 [NCCMH, 2009b]). Many service users expressed that an improvement to
9 services would be the provision of information in the assessment process
10 (Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in preparation]).

11 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

12 Service users described an improvement to their experience of care would be
13 the provision with a clear explanation of what they were going through,
14 especially on first contact with mental health services (Experiences of
15 psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011]).

16 *Evidence from surveys*

17 The Community Mental Health Survey (National Centre for Social Research,
18 2010) (see Chapter 4 for further information about the survey) had three
19 questions relevant to the domain of 'clear, comprehensible information and
20 support for self-care' (see Appendix 11 for full results). Taken together, the
21 survey results suggest that during assessment, many service users are not
22 being given sufficient information and support for self-care. For instance, 44%
23 were not given (or offered) a written or printed copy of their care plan. In
24 those with a care plan, 30% answered that their care plan does not cover what
25 to do if they have a crisis. Furthermore, 9% did not understand what was in
26 their care plan, and 29% were only to some extent sure. The benchmark data
27 indicate that there was large variation in performance between trusts with
28 regard to giving written or printed copies of care plans to service users, and
29 all trusts have room to improve.

30 **6.2.3 Emotional support, empathy and respect**

31 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

32 **Facilitator: professional**

33 Four guidelines found that the role of the professional could act as a facilitator
34 to the assessment process (Alcohol guideline [NCCMH, 2011]; Bipolar
35 disorder guideline [NCCMH, 2006]; BPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]) or as a
36 barrier (Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in preparation]). A quarter of service
37 users in one study expressed the therapeutic relationship to be the most
38 important factor in assessment. These factors included the professional to
39 'genuinely care' and have an understanding of the individual (Alcohol
40 guideline [NCCMH, 2011]). This was echoed in the Self-Harm: Longer Term
41 Management guideline [NCCMH, in preparation] where service users

1 described assessment to be a positive experience when there was engagement
2 with the professional and when it involved restoration of hope (Self-harm
3 guideline [NCCMH, in preparation]). Assessment was often considered
4 difficult because of the focus on painful past experiences but support and
5 information from professionals made the process easier and was a facilitator
6 to assessment (BPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]).

7 **Barrier: professional**

8 The ways in which the professional may act as a barrier to the assessment
9 process was when participants felt devalued by the assessor, were treated in a
10 judgemental manner, or felt they were not understood or not involved in the
11 process (Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in preparation]).

12 **Barrier: lack of time**

13 Other barriers in the assessment process included not having enough
14 feedback from the professional and having the time to talk (Alcohol guideline
15 [NCCMH, 2011]).

16 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

17 **Facilitator: professional**

18 Some people described how the experience of having someone try to make
19 sense of their problems was helpful and aided their recovery:

20 *...my psychiatric nurse told me that I was [um] once I was diagnosed with*
21 *schizophrenia...*

22 *I: And how did you react to being told....?*

23 *R: [um] I was sort of shocked. I was sort of relieved that I could put a name to*
24 *what I was going through. [um] When I sort of researched schizophrenia I*
25 *could simply recognise all the symptoms, all the symptoms, and so I sort of,*
26 *you know, I could recognise this was schizophrenia, so I was sort of relieved to*
27 *have a diagnosis, it felt I had something to work with. (Experiences of*
28 *psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])*

29 **6.2.4 Fast access to reliable health advice**

30 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

31 **Barrier: diagnostic delay**

32 Service users described their experience of severe diagnostic and treatment
33 delay for their bipolar disorder.

34

35 *Over the next 27 years, they all treated me for depression, prescribing me more*
36 *than a dozen different antidepressants. As far as I can tell they did nothing to*
37 *stabilise my mood swings. None of the GPs ever recognised that my high*

1 *moods in between the lows were symptomatic of bipolar disorder.* (Bipolar
2 disorder guideline [NCCMH, 2006])
3

4 **Barrier: time**

5 Some service users in one qualitative review (BPD guideline [NCCMH,
6 2009b]) found that a barrier to the assessment process was the length of time
7 that is involved in the assessment process, (often several weeks).

8 **6.2.5 Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals**

9 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

10 **Barrier: validity of diagnosis**

11 Across the two guidelines on personality disorder, service users questioned
12 the validity of their diagnosis (ASPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009a]; BPD
13 guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]). One study found that service users questioned
14 the legitimacy of the diagnosis of personality disorder as they suffered from
15 other primary, co-morbid problems. However, one participant in another
16 study found it to accurately describe his condition (ASPD guideline
17 [NCCMH, 2009a]). In the BPD guideline (NCCMH, 2009b), the validity of
18 their diagnosis was questioned because some service users received many
19 diagnoses in the past and were therefore sceptical about the diagnosis and
20 others were unsure whether they were ill or just a troublemaker (BPD
21 guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]).

22 **Barrier: lack of, or inconsistent assessment**

23 In one guideline, four included studies found that not all service users
24 received a psychosocial assessment while in hospital, and for those who did,
25 they had varied experiences (Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in preparation]).

26 **Facilitator: professional**

27 If the healthcare professional handled the situation in a positive informed
28 way, then service users could make better use of the diagnosis (BPD guideline
29 [NCCMH, 2009b]).

30 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

31 **Barrier: professional**

32 A negative experience of the assessment process was being told by
33 professionals that they were not mentally ill when they felt distressed: (
34

35 *I went to the doctor, and then I got my Mum involved, and she said, "Oh he*
36 *wants to see a psychiatrist." And, and, you know, I was told all these things.*
37 *"Do you want to be viewed as mad?" And all that. "Do you want to go to the*
38 *mental hospital?" And you know, it was all like real negative. And the GP*

1 *really, he just gave me some pills to take, and said, "You know, you don't*
2 *want to see psychiatrist. It's meant for people that are mentally ill."*
3 (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])

4 **6.2.6 Other themes (including stigma)**

5 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

6 **Barrier: stigma of diagnosis**

7 Many service users felt stigma was attached to the diagnosis in the form of
8 stereotyping and negative judgment by services and society wanting the
9 terminology 'borderline personality disorder' changed (BPD guideline
10 [NCCMH, 2009b]).

11 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

12 **Barrier: symptoms hidden from others**

13 Participants described how they would hide their symptoms from people.

14

15 *'You can't lump everybody in together, you know, to say oh this is, these*
16 *people are manic depressives, so their behaviour would be blah, blah, blah.*
17 *Everybody is different...I might act different to the next manic depressive or*
18 *whatever and, you know, perhaps I might not show my symptoms because*
19 *there's one thing about manic depression, depressives you really are clever at*
20 *hiding your symptoms and very good at manipulating people (PSM*
21 *guideline [NCCMH, in press]).'*

22

23

24 **6.2.7 Evidence summary**

25 Below is a summary of the evidence found for the key problems associated
26 with assessment, organised by the dimensions of person-centred care.

27 *Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences*

28 There was evidence from both the qualitative reviews and the survey that
29 many service users are not being fully involved and informed throughout the
30 assessment process.

31 *Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care*

32 The qualitative evidence and survey both suggest that many service users are
33 not getting sufficient information about the assessment process, about their
34 diagnosis, and about their care plan.

35 *Emotional support, empathy and respect*

36 The qualitative evidence suggests that healthcare professionals can act as both
37 a barrier and a facilitator of a good experience of care; a poor therapeutic

1 relationship with insufficient time for the service user to talk impacts
2 negatively on the experience of the assessment process.

3 *Fast access to reliable health advice*

4 The qualitative evidence suggests that a long drawn out assessment process
5 and delays in receiving a diagnosis lead to poor experience of care.

6 *Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals*

7 The qualitative evidence suggested that inconsistency of the diagnosis and
8 healthcare professionals downplaying the seriousness of the problem can
9 seriously impact on the experience of the assessment process.

10 **6.3 KEY REQUIREMENTS FOR THE PROVISION OF** 11 **HIGH QUALITY SERVICE USER EXPERIENCE**

12 For assessment, the key requirements (qualitative statements based on the
13 GDG's expert opinion) for the provision of high quality service user
14 experience for each dimension of person-centred care are shown in Table 13.
15

Table 13. Key requirements for the provision of high quality service user experience (assessment).

Dimensions of person-centred care	Statement
Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Individual needs of service user are considered: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. prior to the assessment (language, communication) 2. at the assessment (second opinion for diagnosis) 3. following the assessment (communication, including to the carer)
Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Assessment process are clearly explained • Information is provided about how services could be contacted • Permission is sought for anyone else to be present, e.g. student • Full information if a diagnosis is given.
Emotional support, empathy and respect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Assessments are person and culturally centred • Service user is treated with respect and empathy
Fast access to reliable health advice	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users are contacted about a new assessment appointment within two weeks of the date of the referral • If a diagnosis is made, this is shared with the service user and sufficient time and information provided to help the service user understand the meaning of this label and its implications for future treatment and health.
Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Treatment options are provided and discussed and service users are involved in a discussion about an agreed treatment plan. • Options for a second opinion are provided when requested
Attention to physical and environmental needs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Assessments consider all relevant areas of a person's life, including their physical, financial and environmental needs
Involvement of, and support for, family and carers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users' wishes about the involvement of their family and carers in the assessment process is respected • There is regard to the possibility of safeguarding issues and the need to see the service user alone • Family/carers are offered an assessment of their needs as a carer

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Family/carers are also provided with information about the outcome of the assessment and plans for future treatment./ contact with services when the service user supports this
Continuity of care and smooth transitions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users' permission is sought to share information between health professionals • Service user receives copies of all communications unless declined • Management plan is shared with service user • Service users should be involved in and kept informed at every point of a transition or referral to another service. The referring professional is wholly responsible for the service user's care until the referral has been acknowledged and a first session with the referrer has been delivered.

1

2 **6.4 EVIDENCE TO RECOMMENDATIONS**

3 The key problems outlined in the qualitative reviews, analyses and surveys
4 addressed a number of fundamental issues. These included, but were not
5 limited to, the following: delayed or inconsistent diagnosis, insufficient time
6 to discuss complex issues and gain feedback during assessment, poor
7 involvement of service users, a lack of or insufficient information about their
8 diagnosis and care plan, and finally a lack of understanding, support or
9 empathy on part of the professional.

10

11 The GDG expressed a range of targets for improving the quality of assessment
12 in non-acute mental health services including the following: the full
13 consideration of the biopsychosocial needs of the service user, providing a
14 clear outline of the assessment process, treating services users with respect
15 and empathy, allowing sufficient time during the assessment process,
16 providing comprehensive information about any diagnosis made, and
17 involving service users in the discussion of their care plan. Furthermore,
18 professionals should respect service user's requests about the involvement of
19 their family and carers in the assessment process. Finally, service users should
20 be kept as informed as possible at every point of the care pathway.

21

22 After reviewing the key problems and requirements, the GDG outlined a
23 number of broad issues that relate to all points on the care pathway, but were
24 of particular importance to assessment. The recommendations for these
25 aspects of the experience of care included the following: building supportive,
26 empathic and non-judgemental relationships with service users; ensuring the
27 provision of comprehensible verbal and written information in the
28 appropriate language or format about the nature, treatments, and services for
29 their mental health problems including relevant 'Understanding NICE
30 Guidance'; and fostering autonomy in the service user. When working with
31 people using mental health services be respectful and sensitive to diverse
32 cultural, ethnic and religious backgrounds and take into account stigma and
33 discrimination that are often associated with using mental health services.
34 Ensure that all healthcare professionals are competent in assessing people
35 from diverse ethnic and cultural backgrounds using explanatory models of

1 illness if necessary and explain the causes of different mental health problems,
2 treatment options, expectations and adherence.
3 All these issues were placed in care across all points on the care pathway in
4 the NICE guidance.

5
6 Areas identified by the GDG that were of particular importance for improving
7 the assessment in non-acute mental health settings included the following:
8 greeting services in a warm, empathetic and professional manner on arrival;
9 ensuring that the service user is provided with information about the process
10 of assessment; and allowing sufficient time to discuss problems, questions
11 and provide feedback. Moreover, a shared decision making approach should
12 be facilitated by providing adequate information about the different treatment
13 options available and allowing time for discussion of any concerns or issues
14 that the service user may have. Waiting time should be kept to a minimum
15 and waiting facilities should be made comfortable. Finally, if the service user
16 is not satisfied with their assessment they should be offered an opportunity
17 for a second opinion.

18 **6.5 RECOMMENDATIONS**

19 **6.5.1 Practice recommendations relating specifically to** 20 **assessment**

21 **6.5.1.1** On arrival at mental health services for assessment, service users
22 should be greeted and engaged by reception and other staff in a
23 warm, friendly, empathic, respectful and professional manner,
24 anticipating possible distress.

25 **6.5.1.2** Before the assessment begins, the health or social care professional
26 undertaking the assessment should ensure that the service user
27 understands:

- 28 • the process of assessment and how long the appointment
- 29 will last
- 30 • that the assessment will cover all aspects of their experiences
- 31 and life
- 32 • confidentiality and data protection as this applies to them
- 33 • the basic approach of shared decision-making
- 34 • that although they can be accompanied by a family member,
- 35 carer or advocate for all or part of the time, it is preferable to
- 36 see the person alone for some of the assessment
- 37 • that they can refuse permission for any other member of
- 38 staff, such as a student, to be present.

39 **6.5.1.3** When carrying out an assessment:

- 40 • ensure there is enough time for the service user to describe
- 41 and discuss their problems

- 1 • allow enough time towards the end of the appointment for
- 2 summarising the conclusions of the assessment and for
- 3 discussion, with questions and answers.
- 4 • explain the use and meaning of any clinical terms used
- 5 • explain and give written material about any diagnosis given
- 6 • outline different treatment options and give information
- 7 about these to promote discussion and shared
- 8 understanding
- 9 • offer support after the assessment, particularly if sensitive
- 10 issues, such as childhood trauma, have been discussed.
- 11 [QS7]

12 **6.5.1.4** If a service user is unhappy about the assessment and diagnosis, give
13 them time to discuss this and offer them the opportunity for a second
14 opinion.

15 **6.5.1.5** Copy all written communications with other health or social care
16 professionals to the service user at the address of their choice, unless
17 the service user declines this.

18 **6.5.1.6** Ensure that if a service user needs to wait before an assessment, this is
19 for no longer than 10 minutes after the agreed appointment time.
20 [QS6]

21 **6.5.1.7** Ensure that waiting rooms are comfortable, clean and warm, and have
22 areas of privacy, especially for those who are distressed or who
23 request this, or are accompanied by children.

24 **6.5.1.8** Inform service users of their right to a formal community care
25 assessment, and how to access this.

26 **6.5.2 Practice recommendations relating to assessment and all** 27 **points on the pathway**

28 *Avoiding stigma and promoting social inclusion*

29 **6.5.2.1** When working with people using mental health services:

- 30 • take into account that stigma and discrimination are often
- 31 associated with using mental health services
- 32 • make sure that discussions take place in settings in which
- 33 confidentiality, privacy and dignity are respected.
- 34 • be clear with service users about limits of confidentiality.
- 35 [QS2 & QS22]

36 **6.5.2.2** When working with people using mental health services

- 37 • be respectful of, and sensitive to, diverse cultural, ethnic and
- 38 religious backgrounds

- 1 • be aware of possible variations in the presentation of mental
2 health problems according to cultural, ethnic or religious
3 background. [QS2 & QS22]

4 **6.5.2.3** Health and social care professionals working with people using mental
5 health services should have competence in:

- 6 • assessment skills and using explanatory models of illness for
7 people from diverse cultural, ethnic and religious
8 backgrounds
9 • explaining the causes of different mental health problems, if
10 possible, and treatment options
11 • addressing cultural and ethnic differences in treatment
12 expectations and adherence
13 • addressing cultural and ethnic beliefs about biological,
14 social and familial influences on the causes of mental health
15 problems
16 • negotiating skills for working with service users' families
17 and carers
18 • conflict management and conflict resolution. [QS2 & QS22]

19 **6.5.3 Research recommendations**

20 What is the extent to which people using adult mental health services
21 know their diagnosis and what they understand by it? A survey and
22 purposively sampled selection of in-depth interviews should be used,
23 including asking if service users wish to know their diagnosis, and if
24 so, what do they want to know. In addition, the research should aim
25 to identify any inter-diagnostic differences in preferences and needs
26 for knowledge.

27

28

29

30

1 7. COMMUNITY CARE

2 7.1 INTRODUCTION

3 This chapter provides evidence about the key problems relating to
4 community care, and the key requirements for high quality service user
5 experience. Recommendations for best practice and recommendations for
6 research can be found at the end of the chapter.

7
8 The term “Community Care” is used to describe services and support for
9 people that enable them to live as independently as possible either in their
10 own homes or in other residential homes within the local community. The
11 concept has become increasingly significant in care provision not least due to
12 its ongoing difficulties with development and financial support.

13 *Background*

14 For readers interested in the history of mental health and community care, a
15 MIND factsheet⁶ sets out the key dates and important reports and policy
16 documents.

17
18 In the past ten years, mental health policy has determined that service users
19 and carers should have greater influence in both the strategic and frontline
20 decisions about care and support. This culminated in the 2007 *Putting People*
21 *First* English government adult health and social care policy directive
22 (Department of Health, 2007) which outlined the personalisation agenda and
23 implementation plans, such as self directed support, personal budgets and an
24 increase in user-led organisations as part of the adult health and social care
25 support infrastructure. These reforms were prefigured the *White Paper Our*
26 *Health, Our Care, Our Say: a new direction for community services* (Department of
27 Health, 2006a) and by the activities of the Government’s Social Exclusion
28 Unit, which had a programme to tackle the social exclusion of people with
29 mental health problems. Eligible people with mental health problems are
30 entitled to direct payments to choose and control their own social care and
31 support since and can now use different personal budget options:

32
33 “For adult mental health services, the duty on councils to make direct payments to
34 meet social care needs can be incorporated into the CPA, the joint health and social
35 care assessment framework for ‘all adults of working age in contact with the
36 secondary mental health system (health and social care)’, which should provide
37 ‘access, through a single process, to the support and resources of both health and
38 social care’” (Department of Health, 2006b).

39

⁶
http://www.mind.org.uk/help/research_and_policy/the_history_of_mental_health_and_community_care-key_dates

1 The aims of these reforms were to change attitudes towards mental health
2 and illness, to support people with mental health problems to lead more
3 independent and fulfilling lives, to work towards a more preventative and
4 collaborative model of health and social care, to design mental health service
5 provision alongside universal community provision such as education,
6 employment, leisure and transport and in doing so, to challenge the stigma of
7 mental illness and promote social inclusion and self-determination.

8 *Current Practice*

9 Community care presently refers to methods of locality based services
10 provided by both specialist and general multi-disciplinary teams operating
11 the 'care program approach' (CPA). It is intended to enable a 'seamless
12 service' between hospital and community.

13
14 The term CPA currently describes the approach used to assess, plan, review
15 and co-ordinate the range of treatment, care and support needs for people in
16 contact with secondary mental health services who may have complex
17 characteristics or support requirements.

18
19 Fundamental to CPA is the role of the care co-ordinator, but historically the
20 role has not been clearly defined and has been subject to diverse local
21 interpretations and criteria. The role has two critical functions:
22 Building a respectful relationship based upon trust, empathy and shared
23 expertise with the service user.

24
25 Supporting the individual to assess, plan, identify and choose their care and
26 support along with the agreed outcomes they want from that support. The
27 standard approach to care and support planning should be person-centred,
28 and directed by the service user with support as needed. As part of this the
29 service user should be offered the option to have a personal budget, including
30 a direct payment so they can control what social care and support is in their
31 plan. This social care support can be purchased through single or multiple
32 providers from any of the local authority, voluntary and community or
33 independent sectors.

34 **7.2 KEY PROBLEMS REGARDING COMMUNITY** 35 **CARE**

36 Evidence from qualitative reviews/analyses and surveys addressed the
37 following domains of person-centred care:

- 38
39
- 40 • involvement in decisions and respect for preferences
 - 41 • clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care
 - 42 • emotional support, empathy and respect
 - 43 • fast access to reliable health advice
 - effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals

- 1 • attention to physical and environmental needs
- 2 • involvement of, and support for, family and carers
- 3 • continuity of care and smooth transitions.

4

5 For the purposes of the review, themes from the qualitative evidence are
6 summarised only briefly here, with further details provided in Appendix 12.
7 Domains and sources of evidence without themes are not listed below.

8 **7.2.1 Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences**

9 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

10 **Facilitator: service user involvement**

11 Service users across four guidelines expressed wanting to be involved in
12 decisions regarding their care with respect shown for their preferences in
13 treatment (ASPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009a]; Bipolar disorder guideline
14 [NCCMH, 2006]; BPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]; Self-harm guideline
15 [NCCMH, in preparation]).

16

17 Service users also described wanting involvement in decisions in community
18 care. In one study service users emphasised that they had important views on
19 treatment on what was worked or not worked for them in the past which
20 professionals should listen to when deciding on treatment options (ASPD
21 guideline [NCCMH, 2009a]).

22

23 This was further expressed in the Bipolar Disorder guideline [NCCMH, 2006]
24 where service users stated that they want their preferences to be taken into
25 account in treatment in community care and to be treated as equal partners to
26 their professionals:

27

28 *my psychiatrist and other professionals tend to decide what is best for me,*
29 *rather than listening to my thoughts and feelings. (Bipolar disorder*
30 *guideline [NCCMH, 2006])*

31

32 Service users stated that they would benefit from information on treatment
33 options and deciding for themselves what would best meet their need (BPD
34 guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]).

35

36 Service users said they were not able to play an active role in treatment. Some
37 felt treatments were forced upon them and were not listened to when they
38 expressed that certain treatments were not helpful for them. Service users
39 want more responsibility to manage their care:

40

41 *...I wanted to go to a meeting that's discussing my future or what possibly*
42 *could happen in my future. And they said no, clients are not allowed. I think*
43 *that's badly wrong...* (Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in preparation])

1 **Facilitator: more treatment options**

2 Service users across six guidelines identified that they wanted more treatment
3 options including more options for psychological therapy and less reliance on
4 pharmacological treatment (ASPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009a]; PSM guideline
5 [NCCMH, in press]; Bipolar disorder guideline [NCCMH, 2006]; BPD
6 guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]; Depression Update guideline [NCCMH, 2010a],
7 Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in preparation]).

8
9 Two studies in one qualitative review found that service users with
10 personality disorder wanted more choice in treatment with less reliance on
11 pharmacological medication and more 'talking therapies' (ASPD guideline
12 [NCCMH, 2009a]).

13
14 Service users described a lack of treatment options whereby mainly
15 medication was offered (Bipolar Disorder guideline [NCCMH, 2006]). Service
16 users described the lack of individual talking therapies in treatment to deal
17 with their multiple problems (PSM guideline [NCCMH, in press]).

18
19 In addition to wanting more choice between pharmacological and
20 psychological treatment, service users in one study expressed wanting more
21 choice among psychological therapies, as the only treatment offered to them
22 was DBT (BPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]).

23
24 Service users' involvement in community care was not only about their
25 treatment but about services. In one study, service users described wanting to
26 make their own choices regarding services to increase engagement and to be
27 involved in clinicians' training (BPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]).

28
29 One systematic review found that the majority of service users did not receive
30 information about psychological interventions and different treatment
31 options. One participant commented that the only option given was
32 pharmacology and wanted more psychological interventions:

33
34 *They just handed me a drug and said go on it right now . . . I felt rushed*
35 *along, given a prescription, told this will fix it. (Depression Update*
36 *[NCCMH, 2010a])*

37 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

38 **Barrier: concealing information to comply with the professional**

39 There was a feeling among service users of having to conceal certain issues or
40 disclose specific aspects of their illness in order to comply with the
41 expectations and views of their mental health practitioner:

42
43 *...make it clear that you believe what they say, very clearly that you believe*
44 *what they say because if you show or hint that you don't believe what they say*

1 *then that's, then you've undermined your own authority in their eyes and*
2 *therefore that makes the repair process a lot, a lot more difficult and a lot more*
3 *long term. (PSM guideline [NCCMH, in press])*

4 *Evidence from surveys*

5 The Community Mental Health Survey (National Centre for Social Research,
6 2010) (see Chapter 4 for further information about the survey) had four
7 questions relevant to the domain of 'involvement in decisions and respect for
8 preferences' (see Appendix 11 for full results). Taken together, the survey
9 results suggest that a significant number of people are not being fully
10 involved in decisions about their care. For instance, 3% of service users did
11 not feel their healthcare professional listened carefully to them, and a further
12 17% thought they were listened to only to some extent. Similarly, 4% thought
13 their views were not taken into account by the professional caring for them,
14 and 21% answered, 'Yes, to some extent'. Some (7%) service users do not
15 think they are given enough time to discuss their condition and treatment,
16 and 19% think they are, but only to 'some extent'. Importantly, 12% of service
17 users do not think their views are taken into account when deciding which
18 medicines to take, and 31% answered 'Yes, to some extent' on this question.
19 The benchmark data indicate that there was relatively small variation in
20 performance between trusts, although all trusts have room to improve.

21 **7.2.2 Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-** 22 **care**

23 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

24 **Barrier: information**

25 Two qualitative reviews found that a key problem in community care was the
26 lack of information provided to service users about their treatment (Alcohol
27 guideline [NCCMH, 2011]; Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in preparation]).

28
29 The majority of service users in one study expressed that they had inadequate
30 information about the medication they were taking and the potential side
31 effects:

32
33 *I didn't know what they were, what they were going to do to me ... they didn't*
34 *tell me why I was taking them. (Alcohol guideline [NCCMH, 2011])*
35

36 Service users in two studies expressed a lack of information of services for
37 people who self-harm and wished they knew about types of support services
38 before they had self-harmed. Service users recommend that information
39 should be made available on self-harm (Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in
40 preparation]).

41 **Facilitator: information**

1 Service users also stated that there is a need for full discussion about dose and
2 side effects of treatment which is not being provided. They also want
3 information about their condition and preferred this to be provided in
4 booklets, newsletters, videos that are sensitive to social, cultural and
5 educational backgrounds (Bipolar Disorder guideline [NCCMH, 2006]).
6 Information was also wanted in other areas including information about
7 specialist community care and how it differed from mainstream services (BPD
8 guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]).

9 **Facilitator: Information**

10 When information was provided in community care, this was perceived
11 favourably. Coping with rules and boundaries in a community-based service
12 for people with personality disorder was easier when they were made explicit
13 and transparent, and were able to be negotiated (BPD guideline [NCCMH,
14 2009b]).

15 *Evidence from surveys*

16 The Community Mental Health Survey (National Centre for Social Research,
17 2010) (see Chapter 4 for further information about the survey) had six
18 questions relevant to the domain 'clear, comprehensible information and
19 support for self-care (see Appendix 11 for full results). Taken together, the
20 survey results suggest that many service users are not having adequate
21 information about the medication they are prescribed and about how their
22 care is coordinated. For instance, a third of people did not have the purposes
23 of their medications fully explained to them, and 29% were not told about
24 possible side effects of their medication and a further 28% are only told to
25 'some extent' about side effects. In response to the question "Do you think
26 your views were taken into account in deciding which medicines to take",
27 12% answered 'no', and 31% answered 'yes, to some extent'. Worryingly, 28%
28 are not sure or don't know who their care coordinator is. Of those who have a
29 care plan, 48% do not believe their care plan fully sets out their goals. Of those
30 that had a care review, 9% thought it was not helpful, and 39% thought it was
31 only helpful to 'some extent'. The benchmark data indicate that there was
32 substantial variation in performance between trusts on some questions, and
33 all trusts have room to improve.

34 **7.2.3 Emotional support, empathy and respect**

35 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

36 **Facilitator: professional**

37 Across four guidelines, service users described the characteristics of
38 professionals that were facilitators to community care (Alcohol guideline
39 [NCCMH, 2011]; BPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]; PSM guideline [NCCMH,
40 in press]; Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in preparation]).
41

1 Service users wanted professionals treating their alcohol problem to be
2 supportive and to treat them with dignity, respect and genuine concern.
3 Helpful professionals were viewed by one service user as those who:

4
5 *...view you as a person and a woman, not just an addict. They see you have a*
6 *lot of needs and they try to come up with some kind of a plan. (Alcohol*
7 *guideline [NCCMH, 2011])*

8
9 Service users expressed that the most productive relationship with
10 professionals was when it was collaborative, when staff were non-
11 judgmental, caring, and respectful, amongst other characteristics (BPD
12 guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]).

13
14 Female service users with coexisting mental health problems and substance
15 misuse described the traits of empathy, honesty, encouraging and direct as
16 important aspects for effective treatment (PSM guideline [NCCMH, in press]).

17
18 Service users in eight studies reported on characteristics that they valued in
19 professionals which were a caring attitude; recognition of service users'
20 individuality; were direct, proactive, and genuine; were non-judgemental; and
21 did not focus on the physical disfigurements as a result of the self-harm:

22
23 *Look at the individual, not the harm. Look at the person beyond the scars.*
24 *Scars aren't important. It's the person that did them that's important. (Self-*
25 *harm guideline [NCCMH, in preparation])*

26 **Barrier: professional**

27 Service users in three studies reported on barriers that hindered their
28 relationship with the professional including: when professionals appeared not
29 to care about their distress; were slow to respond; and were dismissive of
30 personal problems (Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in preparation]).

31 **Barrier: stigma by professionals**

32 Other barriers included stigma by professionals. Mental health services were
33 characterised by one study as judgmental and lacking in understanding of
34 service users' problems (Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in preparation]).

35 **Barrier: support**

36 A barrier to self-care was that service users did not have the support needed
37 in times of crisis and felt instead that they were pushed towards self-care
38 (BPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]).

39 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

40 **Barrier: professionals**

1 A number of service users suggested that mental health practitioners did not
2 always show respect, which ranged from the way that staff spoke to the
3 service users to the amount of power a doctor had over the service user.
4

5 *Evidence from surveys*

6 The Community Mental Health Survey (National Centre for Social Research,
7 2010) (see Chapter 4 for further information about the survey) had one
8 relevant question (see Appendix 11 for full results). The question asks
9 whether the service user's healthcare professional treated them with respect
10 and dignity. In response, 2% answered 'no', and 10% answered 'yes, to some
11 extent'. The benchmark data indicate that there was relatively little variation
12 in performance between trusts.

13 **7.2.4 Fast access to reliable health advice**

14 Themes relating to access can be found in Chapter 5.

15 **7.2.5 Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals**

16 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

17 **Facilitator: professional**

18 The ways in which professionals facilitate effective treatment were described
19 in two guidelines (BPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]; Self-harm guideline
20 [NCCMH, in preparation]). Therapists who were non-judgmental, who
21 considered service users as an equal and where the therapist pushed and
22 challenged them were viewed favourably by service users (BPD guideline
23 [NCCMH, 2009b]). This was also expressed in the Self-Harm: Longer Term
24 Management guideline (NCCMH, in preparation), that professionals who
25 were respectful, listened and were understanding were perceived favourably.
26 These positive factors were considered present in specialist services as they
27 built a sense of belonging due to sharing experiences with other users and
28 building relationships with professionals and allowed more discussions with
29 service users around recovery (BPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]).
30

31 Other facilitators to effective treatment were key workers. Service users in
32 two guidelines found key workers to be facilitators to effective treatment in
33 community care (PSM guideline [NCCMH, in press]; Self-harm guideline
34 [NCCMH, in preparation]). Service users in one study described their key
35 worker as an important part of effective treatment as they allowed access to
36 local counselling services or alternative treatment options (PSM guideline
37 [NCCMH, in press]). This was also expressed in the Self-Harm: Longer Term
38 Management guideline (NCCMH, in preparation) that having a long-term
39 relationship with one key worker was seen as a facilitator for effective
40 treatment.
41

1 In one review it was found that people needed to understand a language and
2 framework of longer-term recovery to tell their own story of improvement;
3 that getting better meant different things to different people; and that people
4 needed to have control over their recovery (Depression Update guideline
5 [NCCMH, 2010a]).

6 **Facilitator: support**

7 For those undergoing DBT therapy, 24-hour telephone skills coaching was
8 perceived as valuable (BPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]).

9 **Facilitator: peer support**

10 Service users in two studies described the importance of peer support in
11 effective treatment; to have someone who can understand them:

12
13 *most of the counsellors there were ex-addicts themselves and I could relate to*
14 *them, and the things they said because they've been through it.* (PSM
15 guideline [NCCMH, in press])

16 **Barrier: professional**

17 Professionals were also viewed as barriers to effective treatment when they
18 did not demonstrate understanding for the service user's experience and
19 when they forced uninvited ideas upon an individual (Self-harm guideline
20 [NCCMH, in preparation]).

21 **Barrier: stigma by professionals**

22 Service users in one study (which was reported in both the ASPD [NCCMH,
23 2009a] and BPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]) found that when a diagnosis of
24 personality disorder was viewed by professionals as being untreatable this
25 was a barrier to effective treatment.

26 **Barrier: medication**

27 Other key problems regarding community care were related to service users'
28 views on specific treatments that they experienced including medication and
29 specific psychosocial therapy. One systematic review found that service users
30 had mixed feelings about taking medication which included a sense of relief
31 because it helped them cope better but they also felt a lack of control and that
32 there was stigma associated with taking medication (Depression Update
33 guideline [NCCMH, 2010a]).

34
35 Mixed views regarding medication were found in another guideline where
36 service users in four studies found medication to be helpful to cope with their
37 underlying problems; however, not all participants had a positive attitude.

38 **Barrier: undue focus on stopping self-harm**

1 No-harm contracts and the rigid focus of some therapies on stopping self
2 harm were viewed by service users as ineffective. Rather than focusing on
3 immediately stopping harm, they valued treatment that targeted underlying
4 issues. One service user's view on no-harm contracts:

5

6 *I won't make a promise unless I can keep it. Or, I try not to. I need to feel a*
7 *deep sense of obligation to that person and that particular cause to make that*
8 *promise. So that wouldn't have worked for me. (Self-harm guideline*
9 *[NCCMH, in preparation])*

10 **Facilitator: choice of modality**

11 For those users undergoing group psychotherapy, the treatment was
12 considered a good opportunity to share experiences and they valued the peer
13 support. This sentiment was not shared by those who preferred individual
14 therapy (BPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]).

15

16 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

17 **Barrier: professional/treatment**

18 There were many reports within the online accounts of interactions with
19 mental health practitioners. Some service users lacked confidence and trust in
20 their mental health practitioner:

21

22 *I would get very frustrated with what I felt was incompetence and ineptitude*
23 *by my doctors. I did not feel that they were listening to me nor were they*
24 *willing to make medication changes when my current mix of medications did*
25 *not seem to be stopping my cycling. I had three doctors within that year, until*
26 *I found my current doctor, who I am finally comfortable with. (PSM*
27 *guideline [NCCMH, in press])*

28

29 *I've seen different psychiatrists but to me they always feel, they, it's always*
30 *felt like they're sitting on a pedestal... and I'm just there as part of their job*
31 *really. (PSM guideline [NCCMH, in press])*

32

33 Service users said that they did not feel that nurses understood the sensitive
34 nature of their depression, that nurses in the NHS were too busy to talk to
35 their patients and that their attitudes may be because of inadequate training:

36

37 *There's an awful lot there who . . . you felt as though it was people saying to*
38 *you, 'Oh, for goodness sake pull yourself out of it', and, 'Get yourself*
39 *together', which you don't want, it's the last thing at the end of the day. I just*
40 *don't think that there is enough, in regards to, against private and NHS, there*
41 *is just not enough funding to be able to . . . I don't know, train the nurses in a*
42 *certain way. (Depression Update guideline [NCCMH, 2010a])*

43

1 Service users had mixed experience of psychiatrists. Some did not like how
2 psychiatrists tried to illicit information about their childhood experiences,
3 describing the method as a 'text book' approach that instantly created a
4 barrier. Others did not like to discuss feelings in general:

5
6 *I felt my psychiatrist was a very oh wet individual. Again, I think*
7 *because I'd been quite a numerate, factual, organised person, to have someone*
8 *to talking about feelings and what about this and what about that? And it was*
9 *. . . nothing could ever be pin-pointed or . . . I just found it annoying.*

10 (Depression Update guideline [NCCMH, 2010a])
11

12 Service users also had mixed opinions about how their psychiatrist dealt with
13 their medication. The majority had positive experiences, however some
14 service users were concerned about taking tablets; they did not think pills
15 solved the problem or they had a cynical view of drug companies. Others
16 who tried medication who did not have positive experiences said they felt
17 that it 'robbed' them of feelings:

18
19 *I've been prescribed antidepressants in the past but I've always felt reluctant*
20 *and apprehensive about taking it, largely because a) I feel that the effects are*
21 *probably short-term, they're not going to actually resolve the depression, b)*
22 *because they do have side-effects and, c) I didn't feel comfortable, myself, with*
23 *taking some tablets. (Depression Update guideline [NCCMH, 2010a])*
24

25 Many people with depression reported side effects from taking medication,
26 notably dry mouth, hair loss, increased sweating, weight gain and problems
27 with sexual dysfunction. A minority also reported experiencing suicidal
28 thoughts as a consequence of their medication. However, some service users
29 with depression said that the benefits of medication outweighed the potential
30 side effects. One service users with side effects explained:

31
32 *For many years I hadn't had any suicide thoughts at all, and I had certainly*
33 *never thought of cutting myself, but while I was on Seroxat, I did start to get*
34 *sudden images in my head of you know, cutting long gashes in myself.*

35 (Depression Update guideline [NCCMH, 2010a])
36

37 One of the most prominent themes that emerged from all the online accounts
38 was a strong opinion about medication regimes for psychosis. Feelings
39 towards medication were typically ambivalent, and side effects often
40 outweighed the positive aspects of medication in managing symptoms. In
41 some cases, medication had a debilitating effect and was not allowing the
42 service user to engage in other activities in their daily life, for example,
43 holding down a job, staying awake (PSM guideline [NCCMH, in press]).
44

45 Some online accounts highlighted the problematic nature of increasing and
46 changing doses, and how this resulted in them stopping their medication
47 altogether, or relapsing:

1
2 *I was seeing a psychiatrist once a week and slowly I felt like my life was*
3 *getting better. However the medication did not continue to work. So my*
4 *doctors just put the dose up each time they saw me. I was incredibly frustrated*
5 *with this and decided that I would take myself off all the medication and do it*
6 *my own way. (PSM guideline [NCCMH, in press])*
7

8 Others were concerned about the side effects of their medication:
9

10 *Well, lithium turned me into an emotionless zombie. I think they just had me*
11 *on too high of a dose, but I wasn't about to live my life that way, so I stopped*
12 *taking it. Of course, I went back on a manic high right away. (PSM guideline*
13 *[NCCMH, in press])*
14

15 Four service users recounted their experience of ECT; the majority had
16 negative experiences because of the frightening nature of the intervention and
17 loss of memory post-treatment (Depression Update guideline [NCCMH,
18 2010a]).
19

20 Some service users felt that they were not listened to when they discussed the
21 side-effects of medication, or were misinformed about what the likely side-
22 effects would be (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011]).
23

24 One service user felt that they were allowed to get too unwell before mental
25 health practitioners intervened, while on the other hand, another service user
26 felt that professionals were reluctant to reduce the service user's medication
27 (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011]).

28 *Evidence from surveys*

29 The Community Mental Health Survey (National Centre for Social Research,
30 2010) (see Chapter 4 for further information about the survey) had five
31 relevant questions (see Appendix 11 for full results). Taken together, the
32 survey results suggest that many service users are not getting effective
33 treatment from trusted professionals. For example, in response to the question
34 about trust and confidence in the service user's healthcare professional, 7%
35 answered 'no' and 21% answered 'yes, to some extent'. With regard to how
36 well their care coordinator (or lead professional) organised care and services,
37 only 62% answered 'very well'. Furthermore, 19% of service users had not
38 been asked how they were getting on with their medication, and 15% did not
39 find talking therapy helpful. Worse still, 38% did not get enough support with
40 their care responsibilities. The benchmark data indicate that there was
41 substantial variation in performance between trusts on some questions, and
42 all trusts have room to improve.

43 **7.2.6 Attention to physical and environmental needs**

44 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

1 **Barrier: lack of privacy**

2 Some service users felt that the lack of privacy in treatment rooms,
3 particularly in waiting rooms, was a barrier to treatment (Self-harm guideline
4 [NCCMH, in preparation]).

5 **Facilitator: childcare services**

6 Women service users with alcohol problems expressed in two studies that
7 they want outpatient services to be flexible to their needs by providing
8 childcare and be available in the evening or weekends for treatment (Alcohol
9 guideline [NCCMH, 2011]).

10 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

11 **Barrier: day centre/depressing/boring**

12 A few people found going to day centres helpful, but one woman said that
13 her day centre was depressing and boring for her son (Experiences of
14 psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011]).

15 *Evidence from surveys*

16 The Community Mental Health Survey (National Centre for Social Research,
17 2010) (see Chapter 4 for further information about the survey) had five
18 questions relevant to physical and environmental needs (see Appendix 11 for
19 full results). Taken together, the survey results suggest that physical and
20 environmental needs are poorly catered for. For example, 37% of service users
21 were not asked about their physical health needs, and many were not given
22 enough help from anyone in mental health services to find or keep work
23 (48%), find or keep accommodation (43%) and get financial advice or benefits
24 (43%), even though the service user would have liked help. The benchmark
25 data indicate that there was substantial variation in performance between
26 trusts on most questions, and all trusts have room to improve.

27 **7.2.7 Involvement of, and support for, family and carers**

28 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

29 **Facilitator: involvement of family, carers and peer support**

30 Service users in one study noted the influence of family and friends in helping
31 promoting change in alcohol consumption. In particular, the support from
32 peers in facilitated treatment programmes using peer support approaches:

33
34 *Here was a bunch of people who really understood where I was coming from.*
35 *(Alcohol guideline [NCCMH, 2011])*
36

37 A quarter of service users felt that professionals did not offer families and
38 carers enough support (Drug misuse guideline [NCCMH, 2008]).

1 *Evidence from surveys*

2 The Community Mental Health Survey (National Centre for Social Research,
3 2010) (see Chapter 4 for further information about the survey) had two
4 questions relevant to involving family and carers (see Appendix 11 for full
5 results). Taken together, the survey results suggest that many people are not
6 getting the involvement of, and support for, their families and carers. For
7 instance, 20% of service users were not told they could bring a friend, relative
8 or advocate to their care review meetings, and 20% felt that mental health
9 services had not involved a member of their family (or someone else close to
10 them) as much as they would like. The benchmark data indicate that there
11 was some variation in performance between trusts, and all trusts have room
12 to improve.

13 **7.2.8 Continuity of care and smooth transitions**

14 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

15 **Barrier: service organisation**

16 Staff turnover and a lack of co-ordination between services, was also judged
17 to be a barrier to effective treatment (PSM guideline [NCCMH, in press]).

18 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

19 **Barrier: coordination between the police and mental health services**

20 A theme which emerged from the online accounts was the link between
21 mental health services and the criminal justice system and the police. Several
22 accounts compared how, in the UK, there needs to be more co-ordination
23 between the police and mental health services in order to make the most
24 effective referrals for people with psychosis and co-existing substance misuse.
25 In addition, information regarding mental illness was mentioned as necessary
26 to circulate to the police.

27

28 *...if you're struggling with a substance misuse problem you'd be better off in,*
29 *in the criminal justice system. People say that their lives have been saved by*
30 *being put in the criminal justice system being forced to come off the drugs and*
31 *then given help to stay off. And I have to tell you that at the moment there's*
32 *no, no plan to, to give that kind of care to, to people in my [NHS] trust. (PSM*
33 *guideline [NCCMH, in press])*

34 **Barrier: poor continuity**

35 Poor continuity of care was a theme that emerged, with one service user
36 explaining that they had to see different psychologists every time, while
37 another person said they were made to repeat their story numerous times,
38 while another said they had been seen by different services and received
39 different diagnoses (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011]).

1 Barrier: service design

2 One service user explained that they were seen by different services and
3 given different diagnoses (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011]).

4 Evidence from surveys

5 The Community Mental Health Survey (National Centre for Social Research,
6 2010) (see Chapter 4 for further information about the survey) had one
7 question relevant to the domain 'continuity of care and smooth transitions'
8 (see Appendix 11 for full results). The results show that 43% of service users
9 did not have a care review meeting during the previous 12 months to discuss
10 their care plan. The benchmark data indicate that there was variation in
11 performance between trusts, and all trusts have room to improve.

12 7.2.9 Other themes**13 Evidence from qualitative reviews****14 Barrier: process issues**

15 Service users described methadone scripts to be time-consuming (must be
16 collected daily). This restricted their job opportunities (Drug misuse guideline
17 [NCCMH, 2008]).

18 Barrier: stigma of medication

19 Three studies in one qualitative review described reasons for service-users'
20 non-adherence to medication which included service users expressing that
21 they did not need medication in the first place or that they did not have a
22 mental illness, the side effects of medication, the stigma associated with
23 medication and the concern that the medication would not allow them to
24 have control over their symptoms (PSM guideline [NCCMH, in press]).

25 Barrier: stigma of psychological therapy

26 Stigma associated with psychological therapy caused some service users to
27 miss appointments:

28

29 *I hated it. Couldn't stand the psychiatrist... Just thought "I must be crazy"*
30 *that's all that came into my head. That's what I thought "if you see one of*
31 *them, you're crazy" (Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in preparation]).*

32 Preference: community care

33 Service users expressed a preference for specialist community-based
34 intervention that had immediate aftercare and acknowledged that self-harm
35 may not necessarily involve its prevention (Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in
36 preparation]).

37 Evidence from qualitative analyses

1 **Barrier: stigma**

2 Service users described the stigma around receiving treatment for depression
3 for both psychological and pharmacological interventions:

4
5 *It took a hell of a lot for me to go to therapy. You know A: nutters go to*
6 *therapy, B: therapy makes you a nutter. These were the kind of things that I*
7 *grew up with. And it doesn't help. You know, so hostile kind of lower middle*
8 *class sort of feeling about that sort of thing (Depression Update guideline*
9 *[NCCMH, 2010a]).*

10
11 Service users described a number of other issues that they did not like,
12 including always being considered a mental health 'patient', being
13 encouraged to take a 'dead end' job, and the relative lack of black and
14 minority ethnic doctors (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011]).

15 **7.2.10 Evidence summary**

16 Below is a summary of the evidence found for the key problems associated
17 with community care, categorised according to the dimensions of person-
18 centred care.

19 *Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences*

20 There is considerable evidence from both qualitative reviews and survey data
21 suggesting that some service users are not being fully involved in decisions
22 about their care and their preferences respected.

24 *Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care*

25 The qualitative evidence and survey data both suggest that a key problem in
26 community care is a lack of information provided to service users about
27 treatment. One qualitative review described that when information was
28 provided, it facilitated treatment and enabled informed choice for support.

29 *Emotional support, empathy and respect*

30 The qualitative evidence suggested that service users do experience problems
31 to do with poor emotional support, empathy and respect from mental health
32 practitioners. The survey data suggest that at least 12% of service users are
33 not all ways being treated with respect and dignity.

34 *Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals*

35 The qualitative evidence suggested considerable problems regarding
36 treatment, ranging from medication side effects and lack of psychological
37 therapies to problems associated with non-flexible services. In particular,
38 when professionals give service users the impression that a particular
39 disorder is untreatable, the experience of care will be poor. The survey data

1 supports the qualitative evidence, and suggests much more can be done to
2 improve experience.

3 *Attention to physical and environmental needs*

4 The qualitative evidence suggested barriers regarding the physical and
5 environmental needs of service users in community care. These included a
6 lack of privacy currently available in waiting rooms and a lack of services
7 available to the needs of service users including child care. The survey data
8 also suggests that much more can be done to the experience of care through
9 focusing on physical and environmental needs.

10 *Involvement of, and support for, family and carers*

11 The qualitative reviews identified that the experience of care could be
12 improved by involving family, carers and peers in community care. The
13 survey data supports this finding, with many service users not being enabled
14 to receive the support of their families.

15 *Continuity of care and smooth transitions*

16 Qualitative evidence suggested the lack of co-ordination between the police
17 and mental health services, service configuration problems and staff turnover
18 lead to poor experience. The survey data suggest that many service users are
19 not receiving regular care review meetings.

20 *Other themes (including stigma)*

21 Other themes which did not relate to a specific dimension of person-centred
22 care were barrier including process issues relating to community treatment
23 (qualitative review; Drug misuse guideline [NCCMH, 2008]) and a preference
24 for community care (qualitative review, Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in
25 preparation]).

26
27 Other themes were related to stigma associated with medication (qualitative
28 review, PSM guideline [NCCMH, in press]) and receiving treatment for
29 severe mental illness including psychological interventions found in one
30 qualitative review (Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in preparation]) and one
31 qualitative analysis (Depression Update guideline [NCCMH, 2010a]).

32 **7.3 KEY REQUIREMENTS FOR THE PROVISION OF** 33 **HIGH QUALITY SERVICE USER EXPERIENCE**

34 The key requirements (qualitative statements based on the GDG's expert
35 opinion) for the provision of high quality service user experience for
36 community care are shown in Table 14.

37

Table 14. Key requirements for the provision of high quality service user experience (community care).

Dimensions of person-centred care	Statement
Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A standard letter and form sent to service user in advance of appointment. • Service user to be fully involved and active in the design and delivery of the care plan, and health and social care professional and service user to sign the document and a copy kept by service user. • All available treatment options should be offered to service users verbally and in writing on the day of consultation. • Care plan to include meaningful activities/volunteering /education, re-training, part full time employment. • Refusal of a treatment should not automatically be seen as the service user being difficult to engage • People at risk of hospitalisation should have joint crisis plans which should be respected and implemented
Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The language in care and support plan should be in a language determined and understood by the service user. • SMART⁷ objectives should be used. • Service user should have the option of keeping their record in their in a suitable format. • A team leader should be put in place to oversee the service user mental and practical issues • Inform service users of appropriate local user led support organisations or options for peer-support
Emotional support, empathy and respect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All staff should have empathy and hope and show respect and believe that all service users can recover (as defined by the service user) and progress. • The service user should have the choice of who they think would give the best emotional support and support for decisions.
Fast access to reliable health advice	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A system should be put in place that service users can get advice on the services in local area. • Reception staff should be trained in interpersonal skills, and where necessary, other languages.
Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All health and social care professionals should provide a holistic, person-centred approach to their work and service user. • All health and social care professionals should be able to sign post and refer to other services. • All health and social care professionals should provide interdependent coping skills training • All health and social care professionals should have core skills training and option to specialise in any relevant areas deem fit to carry out their role. • All trusts to have service user on their Board, monitoring and audit committees. • Service user to have the option of talking to advocate or have a 3 way to discuss issue before any change are made.
Attention to physical	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The consultation at first should be in a secure venue.

⁷ Specific, Measurable, Attainable, Relevant, Timely.

and environmental needs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For health and social care professionals and service user after the first meeting the next can be agreed to meeting in a more suitable place if required
Involvement of, and support for, family and carers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All families and carers should be offered the option of joining a support group or having one to one supervision with health and social care professionals. • A training programme to be developed to help them in their role. • All health and social care professionals must keep confidentiality and share information only with consent of the service user in advance of contact with others.
Continuity of care and smooth transitions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If all staff have core training the continuity of care should be same when staff moves. • To help sort the problems with communications between agencies and services the service user should keep their information in any format they like and share it as their see fit or a team leader can be appointed to correlate the services.

1
2

3 **7.4 EVIDENCE TO RECOMMENDATIONS**

4 The problems identified by the qualitative reviews and analyses and the
5 surveys revealed a broad range of problems which resonated with the
6 experience of the guidance group. For example, the lack of good information
7 about treatments, poor involvement in decision making, few treatment
8 options, especially psychological treatments, and a low level of optimism,
9 especially for service users with more severe mental health problems.
10 Practical support to attend treatment was highlighted especially for mothers,
11 and when people attended mental health facilities the waiting areas were
12 poorly designed with a lack of privacy for some. Families were also
13 recognised as feeling left out of treatment planning and service users often felt
14 stigmatised, especially around the use of medication such as antipsychotics.
15 Nevertheless, the evidence, and the GDG, clearly wanted to see community
16 services improve rather than a return to more institutional care of the past.

17
18 The guidance group voiced a wide range of aspirations, not always in
19 agreement. However, the guidance group were most in agreement about the
20 more prosaic aspects of care, such as better waiting areas, the inclusion of
21 meaningful activity and occupation into care plans, service users holding
22 their own care plans and being given information about where to get good
23 advice in the community. Other more far reaching suggestions included
24 service users being represented on trust board and being involved in the
25 design and shaping the delivery of services.

26
27 On reviewing the aspirations and the key problems, the GDG focused
28 attention on some broad issues that apply across all points on the care
29 pathway, but were of particular importance to community care. The
30 recommendations for these aspects of the experience of care included the

1 need for health and social care professionals to engage service users and
2 carers in an atmosphere of optimism and hope, with empathy and without
3 judgement; to foster autonomy in the service user; to offer an advocate to
4 support the service user, especially at times of difficulty; to ensure continuity
5 of care; and to provide information about treatments, services, side effects,
6 national and local resources, including websites that may be helpful.
7 Involving families was also a key issue to 'get right': the guidance group
8 wanted one approach for service users who wanted the family involved and
9 another for when they did not, a clear difference is in tactfully negotiating and
10 balancing confidentiality and information sharing differently in each
11 situation. All these issues were placed in care across all points on the care
12 pathway in the NICE guidance.

13

14 Areas specifically of importance to improve the experience of care in the
15 community included the use of different media to support communication;
16 jointly developing care and treatment plans to include activities that support
17 social inclusion; promoting and maintaining independence; increased
18 emphasis on personal budgets and direct payments; easy access to care plans,
19 including electronic versions, with a place for service users to contribute
20 directly to their own care records. Helping service users at risk of
21 hospitalisation to plan ahead by developing crisis plans was also seen as a
22 priority, particularly for those with more severe problems, those who have
23 been admitted in the past and/or treated under the Mental Health Act
24 (HMSO, 2007). Service problems to be addressed included continuity of care
25 and the need to stay in touch with known individuals; access to NICE
26 recommended psychological therapies, which are often lacking; supporting
27 people from minority groups to get access to the full range of treatments and
28 making sure that mental health and social care professionals not familiar with
29 working with different ethnic groups should get training and supervision to
30 do this. Although these were by no means exhaustive, and the guidance
31 group could have suggested more, these were the main suggestions for
32 recommendations that mainly apply to community care.

33

1 **7.5 RECOMMENDATIONS**

2 **7.5.1 Practice recommendations relating specifically to** 3 **community care**

4 **7.5.1.1** When communicating with service users use diverse media, including
5 letters, phone calls, emails or text messages, according to the service
6 user's preference.

7 **7.5.1.2** Develop care plans jointly with the service user, and include activities
8 that promote social inclusion such as education, employment,
9 volunteering and other occupations such as leisure activities and
10 caring for dependants. Give the service user an up-to-date written
11 copy of the care plan. [QS9]

12 **7.5.1.3** Support service users to develop strategies, including risk- and self-
13 management plans, to promote and maintain independence and self-
14 efficacy, wherever possible. Incorporate these strategies into the care
15 plan.

16 **7.5.1.4** If they are eligible, give service users the option to have a personal
17 budget or direct payment so they can choose and control their social
18 care and support, with appropriate professional and peer support as
19 needed.

20 **7.5.1.5** For people at risk of hospitalisation, a crisis plan should be developed
21 by the service user and their care coordinator, which should be
22 respected and implemented, and incorporated into the care plan. The
23 crisis plan should include:

- 24 • where the person would like to be admitted
- 25 • possible early warning signs of a crisis,
- 26 • the practical needs of the service user if they are admitted to
27 hospital (childcare or the care of other dependants,
28 including pets). [QS10]

29 **7.5.1.6** Ensure that service users routinely have access to their care plan and
30 care record, including electronic versions. Care records should
31 contain a section in which the service user can document their views
32 and preferences, and any differences of opinion with health and
33 social care professionals.

34 **7.5.1.7** Trusts should ensure that service users:

- 35 • can routinely receive care and treatment from a single
36 multidisciplinary community team
- 37 • are not passed from one team to another
- 38 • do not undergo multiple assessments. [QS4]

1 **7.5.1.8** Ensure that service users have access to the psychological, psychosocial
2 and pharmacological interventions recommended for their mental
3 health problem in NICE guidance.

4 **7.5.1.9** Mental health services should work with local voluntary black and
5 minority ethnic and other minority groups to jointly ensure that
6 culturally appropriate psychological and psychosocial treatments,
7 consistent with NICE guidance and delivered by competent
8 practitioners, are provided to service users from all ethnic and
9 cultural backgrounds.

10 **7.5.1.10** Mental health and social care professionals inexperienced in working
11 with service users from diverse ethnic and cultural backgrounds
12 should seek advice, training and supervision from health and social
13 care professionals who are experienced in working with people from
14 different cultures.

15 **7.5.2 Practice recommendations relating to community care and** 16 **all points on the pathway**

17 **7.5.2.1** Work in partnership with people using mental health services and
18 their families or carers. Offer help, treatment and care in an
19 atmosphere of hope and optimism. Take time to build supportive,
20 empathic and non-judgemental relationships as an essential part of
21 care. [QS1]

22 **7.5.2.2** When working with people using mental health services:

- 23 • aim to foster their autonomy, promote active participation in
24 treatment decisions and support self-management [QS3]
25 • maintain continuity of individual therapeutic relationships
26 wherever possible
27 • ensure that comprehensive written information about the
28 nature of, and treatments and services for, their mental
29 health problems is available in an appropriate language or
30 format including any relevant 'Understanding NICE
31 guidance' booklets
32 • offer access to an advocate.

33 **7.5.2.3** Ensure that you are:

- 34 • familiar with local and national sources (organisations and
35 websites) of information and/or support for people using
36 mental health services
37 • able to discuss and advise how to access these resources.

38 *Consent, capacity and treatment decisions*

1 **7.5.2.4** Develop advance statements and advance decisions with the person
2 using mental health services, especially if their illness is severe and
3 they have been previously treated under the Mental Health Act (1983;
4 amended 1995 and 2007). Document these in their care plans and
5 ensure copies are held by the service user and in primary and
6 secondary care records. [QS10]

7 *Involving families and carers*

8 **7.5.2.5** Discuss with the person using mental health services if and how they
9 want their family or carers to be involved in their care. [QS21]

10 **7.5.2.6** If the person using mental health services wants their family or carers
11 to be involved, encourage this involvement and:

- 12 • negotiate between the service user and their family or carers
13 about confidentiality and sharing of information on an
14 ongoing basis
- 15 • explain how families or carers can help support the service
16 user and help with treatment plans
- 17 • make sure that no services are withdrawn because of the
18 family's or carers' involvement, unless this has been clearly
19 agreed with the service user and their family or carers.

20 **7.5.2.7** If the person using mental health services wants their family or carers
21 to be involved, give the family or carers verbal and written
22 information about:

- 23 • the mental health problem(s) experienced by the service user
24 and its treatment, including relevant 'Understanding NICE
25 guidance' booklets
- 26 • statutory and voluntary local support groups and services
27 specifically for families and carers, and about how to access
28 these
- 29 • their right to a formal carer's assessment of their own
30 physical and mental health needs, and how to access this.

31
32 **7.5.2.8** If the service user does not want their family or carers to be involved in
33 their care:

- 34 • seek consent from the service user and if they agree give the
35 family or carers verbal and written information on the
36 mental health problem(s) experienced by the service user
37 and its treatments, including relevant 'Understanding NICE
38 guidance'
- 39 • give the family or carers information about statutory and
40 voluntary local support groups and services specifically for
41 families or carers, and how to access these

- 1 • tell the family or carers about their right to a formal carer's
2 assessment of their own physical and mental health needs,
3 and how to access this
4

5 **7.5.3 Research recommendations**

6 **7.5.3.1** How can providers of mental health services help to reduce stigma
7 experienced by people with mental health problems?

8

1 8. ASSESSMENT AND REFERRAL 2 IN CRISIS (NOT UNDER THE 3 MENTAL HEALTH ACT)

4 8.1 INTRODUCTION

5 This chapter provides evidence about the key problems relating to assessment
6 and referral in crisis (when not under a section of the Mental Health Act
7 [HMSO, 1983; amended 1995 and 2007; HMSO, 2007]), and the key
8 requirements for high quality service user experience. Recommendations for
9 best practice and recommendations for research can be found at the end of the
10 chapter.

11 *Current practice*

12 Barriers to accessing services discussed in Chapter 5, mean that in some
13 instances attempts are not made to access mental health services until a
14 person is already in crisis. Existing NICE guidelines recommend that at such
15 times services need to make a timely response to assess a person's mental
16 health and social needs and any risk of harm to self or others (for example, see
17 the update of the schizophrenia guideline; NICE, 2009b).

18
19 Services for assessing people in crisis vary among different mental health
20 Trusts, but they generally involve psychiatric liaison services who assess
21 people in acute medical setting such as Emergency Departments and crisis or
22 home treatment teams who aim to assess, support and treat people in the
23 community who may otherwise need to be treated in hospital. This threshold
24 of 'working only with people who may otherwise need to be treated in
25 hospital' means that some people who are experiencing a crisis may not be
26 considered to have mental health needs which are sufficiently great to be
27 treated by such teams. The issue of how people whose mental health is
28 deteriorating can access assessment and support services is therefore an
29 important one.

30 8.2 KEY PROBLEMS REGARDING ASSESSMENT 31 AND REFERRAL IN CRISIS

32 Evidence from qualitative reviews/analyses addressed the following domains
33 of person-centred care:

- 34
35
 - 36 • fast access to reliable health advice
 - 37 • effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals.

38 No evidence was identified that directly addressed:
39

- 1 • involvement in decisions and respect for preferences
- 2 • clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care
- 3 • emotional support, empathy and respect
- 4 • attention to physical and environmental needs
- 5 • involvement of, and support for, family and carers
- 6 • continuity of care and smooth transitions.

7
8 For the purposes of the review, themes from the qualitative evidence are
9 summarised only briefly here, with further details provided in Appendix 12.
10 Domains and sources of evidence without themes are not listed below.

11 **8.2.1 Fast access to reliable health advice**

12 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

13 **Facilitator: waiting times**

14 Two guidelines found a key problem to assessment and referral to services in
15 crisis was the waiting times (Alcohol guideline [NCCMH, 2011]; Drug misuse
16 guideline [NCCMH, 2008]). Over one third of service users with alcohol
17 problems reported that they wanted quicker referral to treatment in order to
18 maintain treatment motivation and to receive medical care:

19
20 *When you make that decision to ask for help, you need it straight away. If you*
21 *have to wait a long time to get in you just lose your motivation and you might*
22 *just give up. (Alcohol guideline [NCCMH, 2011])*

23
24 Service users in one study reported that the long waiting time to receive
25 inpatient treatment was a barrier to accessing treatment because their
26 motivation to change decreased over time:

27
28 *I'd go with all the intentions to get off it...but the longer you have to wait, the*
29 *more and more trouble you get in. Eight months is a long time; you don't*
30 *know what is going to happen to you. (Drug misuse guideline [NCCMH,*
31 *2008])*

32
33 However, in some cases, users were aware of the high demand in services and
34 were satisfied with the waiting times (Drug misuse guideline [NCCMH,
35 2008]).

36
37 In a crisis, lack of instant help in A&E was mentioned by the service users as a
38 problem:

39
40 *I actually thought my heart was going to stop when.. I was just so terrified. So I flee*
41 *to A & E and I was getting a commentary and they were telling me all about*
42 *psychiatric drugs. [...] And nobody came to help me in A & E. They just put me in a*

1 *room and left me there and I was so distressed that I thought, right I've got to get up*
2 *to [name of place]. (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])*

3 **8.2.2 Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals**

4 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

5 **Barrier: validity of diagnosis**

6 Across the two guidelines on personality disorder, service users questioned
7 the validity of their diagnosis (ASPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009a]; BPD
8 guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]). One study found that service users questioned
9 the legitimacy of the diagnosis of personality disorder as they suffered from
10 other primary, co-morbid problems. However, one participant in another
11 study found it to accurately describe his condition (ASPD guideline
12 [NCCMH, 2009a]). In the BPD guideline, the validity of their diagnosis was
13 questioned because some service users received many diagnoses in the past
14 and were therefore sceptical about the diagnosis and others were unsure
15 whether they were ill or just a troublemaker (BPD guideline [NCCMH,
16 2009b]). Diagnosis was an important but sometimes controversial outcome of
17 contact with services according to some service users. Many people said they
18 had received different diagnoses over time, had more than one diagnosis at a
19 particular time or felt that schizophrenia was not a valid diagnosis and
20 preferred other descriptions such as 'voice hearers'. (Experiences of psychosis
21 [Healthtalkonline, 2011]).

22 **8.2.3 Evidence summary (not under the Mental Health Act)**

23 Below is a summary of the evidence found for the key problems associated
24 with assessment and referral in crisis (not under the Mental Health Act
25 [HMSO, 2007]), categorised according to the dimensions of person-centred
26 care.

27 *Fast access to reliable health advice*

28 The qualitative evidence suggests that for some service users, waiting for
29 assessment when in crisis can cause problems.

30 *Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals*

31 The qualitative evidence suggests that for some service users, the legitimacy
32 of their diagnosis can be a problem, especially if different diagnoses had been
33 given in the past. When people changed psychiatrist, their diagnosis
34 sometimes changed too; one person moved around a lot and received many
35 diagnoses. Some people felt angry that they were 'misdiagnosed' and that
36 they had received the wrong treatment because of this.

1 8.3 KEY REQUIREMENTS FOR THE PROVISION OF 2 HIGH QUALITY SERVICE USER EXPERIENCE

3 For assessment and referral in crisis, the key requirements (qualitative
4 statements based on the GDG's expert opinion) for the provision of high
5 quality service user experience for each dimension of person-centred care are
6 shown in Table 15.

7 **Table 15: Key points on the pathway of care (acute care, not under MHA)**

Dimensions of person-centred care	Statement
Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users can expect a health and social care professional to attend to them, respecting their views and exploring other options where possible apart from hospital admission. The inequality of power in the relationship is respected, giving the service user access to an advocate where requested. • It should be recognised that service users often have experience of being in crisis and can recognise when they are heading into a crisis. Health and social care professionals should respect this knowledge and work with the service user to access the appropriate service rather than waiting for a full crisis to occur.
Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users can expect all reasonable support with managing factors which have contributed to the crisis, keeping their options open for return to work or study and protection of their dependents and next of kin.
Emotional support, empathy and respect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users can expect support preventing a crisis becoming a disaster by helpful staff. Because this is difficult to judge, there should be routine recording of telephone conversations according to NHS best practice, and support in managing complaints. The power differential between staff and the service user must be respected.
Fast access to reliable health advice	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users can expect to speak in a timely way to an informed professional who will help them make the right decision about their next steps, whether referral, community support, and/or medication. For those who may need inpatient treatment this assessment should take place within four hours of referral. For other referrals in crisis an assessment should take place within 24 hours of referral. • People who have had previous contact with mental health services should be able to self refer to secondary care. • Trusts should ensure that service users have easy access to 24-hour staffed help lines and that all GPs in the area know the number. • Services should recognise that service users often have knowledge and experience of their distress and can recognise when they are heading for crisis even if they are not currently in a crisis. This should be recognised and supported and access to the appropriate service be given to prevent a crisis instead of waiting for a crisis to occur.

Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users can expect to meet a trained healthcare professional who will explore the context of their problems, be experienced in crisis working and able to treat holistically, by appropriate referral, involvement of a multi-agency team, community resources and/or medication. • Provision of crisis assessment should not be focussed solely on the Emergency Department of a general hospital. Some direct access to secondary care mental health services should also be available.
Attention to physical and environmental needs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The service user can expect a convenient and comfortable location, protected from harassment from those who might wish him/her harm or other service user, and where all staff are kind, welcoming and helpful without exception.
Involvement of, and support for, family and carers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users can request help for family and carers in coming to terms with their difficulties, and someone to be able to contact reliably when more help is needed. • Family and carers should also be informed of how urgent access to assessment services can be arranged.
Continuity of care and smooth transitions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Access to crisis services should not be restricted to people with certain diagnoses (such as only people with a psychosis). • Service users can expect all staff to work together well; those best known to him/her to have a “buddy” who will cover for the healthcare professional when they are absent; for medication to be prescribed accurately, for appointments to run according to time and delays to be communicated.

1

2 8.4 EVIDENCE TO RECOMMENDATIONS

3 Key problems that were identified by qualitative reviews and analysis
4 relating to assessment and referral in crisis revealed the following issues. In
5 regards to receiving fast access to reliable health advice, service users
6 reported a problem with waiting times for inpatient treatment and referral to
7 treatment, although some service users understood the high demands of
8 services and did not consider waiting times a problem. Long waiting times
9 become a particular problem for service users because of the difficulty in
10 maintaining motivation for treatment and motivation to change. With regard
11 to treatment delivered by trusted professionals, service users reported
12 problems in the validity of their diagnosis. For example, if a service user has
13 received many diagnoses in the past or has had more than one diagnosis at a
14 particular time, he/she can become sceptical about their current diagnosis.

15

16 The key requirements voiced by service users for assessment and referral in
17 crisis included the need for health care professionals to acknowledge the
18 inequality of power between professionals and service users and the need for
19 an advocate in some cases if requested. The GDG felt that health and social
20 care professionals should recognise and support the fact that service users
21 have the experience to realise when they are heading into or are in a crisis,
22 and so necessary action should be taken to prevent a crisis rather than waiting
23 for one to occur. One such requirement that could address this issue is to
24 ensure service users have easy access to 24-hour help lines. There should be a

1 holistic approach to the support provided which should manage potential
2 factors that may contribute to a crisis and prevent a crisis from escalating
3 further. Family and carers of service users should be offered help if requested
4 and informed of urgent access to assessment services. There should be an
5 informed decision for next steps regarding referral, community support,
6 medication and/or the involvement of a multi-agency teams. Suggestions for
7 better access to secondary care mental health services include self referral and
8 some direct access.

9

10

11 Areas specifically of importance to improve the experience of assessment in
12 crisis included the following: a service users previous experiences of mental
13 health services, engaging service users in a supportive and respectful way,
14 providing information about processes and outcomes, addressing individual
15 needs, assessment by experienced health and social care professionals and
16 taking account of a service user's preference of place of assessment. The speed
17 of referral to secondary care was seen as a central issue; specifically, when a
18 person is referred in crisis they should be seen by specialist mental health
19 services within 4 hours. Also, ensure access to 24-hour help lines; access to
20 crisis resolution and home treatment teams; assessment and treatment
21 regardless of diagnosis; support in the service users own home; home
22 treatment depending on service users preferences and direct self-referral to
23 mental health services.

1 **8.5 RECOMMENDATIONS**

2 **8.5.1 Practice recommendations related specifically to** 3 **assessment and referral in crisis**

4 **8.5.1.1** Immediately before assessing a service user who has been referred in
5 crisis, find out if they have had experience of acute or non-acute
6 mental health services, and consult their crisis plan if they have one.

7 **8.5.1.2** When undertaking a crisis assessment:

- 8 • address and engage service users in a supportive and
9 respectful way
- 10 • provide clear information about the process and its possible
11 outcomes, addressing the individual needs of the service
12 user, as set out in **Error! Reference source not found.**
- 13 • take extra care to understand and emotionally support the
14 service user in crisis, considering their level of distress and
15 associated fear, especially if they have never been in contact
16 with services before, or if their prior experience of services
17 has been difficult and/or they have had compulsory
18 treatment under the Mental Health Act (1983; amended 1995
19 and 2007).

20 **8.5.1.3** Assessment in crisis should be undertaken by experienced health and
21 social care professionals competent in crisis working, and should
22 include an assessment of the service user's relationships, social and
23 living circumstances and level of functioning, as well as their
24 symptoms, behaviour, diagnosis and current treatment. [QS11]

25 **8.5.1.4** If assessment in the service user's home environment is not possible, or
26 if they do not want an assessment at home, take full consideration of
27 their preferences when selecting a place for assessment.

28 **8.5.1.5** When a person is referred in crisis they should be seen by specialist
29 mental health secondary care services within 4 hours of referral. [QS6]

30 **8.5.1.6** Trusts should ensure that service users have access to 24-hour
31 helplines, staffed by trained health and social care professionals, and
32 that all GPs in the area know the telephone number. [QS6]

33 **8.5.1.7** Trusts should ensure that crisis resolution and home treatment teams
34 are accessible 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, and that they are the
35 first service to assess and provide treatment for service users in crisis
36 regardless of their diagnosis. [QS6]

37 **8.5.1.8** To avoid admission, aim to:

- 38 • support a service user in crisis in their home environment

- 1 • make early plans to help the service user maintain their day-
2 to-day activities, including work, education, voluntary
3 work, and other occupations such as caring for dependants
4 and leisure activities, wherever possible.

5 **8.5.1.9** At the end of a crisis assessment, ensure that the decision to start home
6 treatment depends not on the diagnosis but on:

- 7 • the level of distress
8 • the severity of the problems
9 • the vulnerability of the service user
10 • issues of safety and support at home
11 • the reliability of access to, and the person's cooperation
12 with, treatment.

13 **8.5.1.10** Consider the support and care needs of families or carers of service
14 users in crisis. Where needs are identified, ensure they are met when
15 it is safe and practicable to do so.

16 **8.5.1.11** Trusts should support direct self-referral to mental health services as
17 an alternative to accessing urgent assessment via the emergency
18 department.

19

20

1 9. HOSPITAL CARE

2 9.1 INTRODUCTION

3 This chapter provides evidence about the key problems relating to hospital
4 care (Section 9.2), and the key requirements for high quality service user
5 experience (Section 9.3). Further information about the source of evidence can
6 for the key problems review can be found in Chapter 4. Recommendations for
7 best practice and recommendations for research can be found at the end of the
8 chapter.
9

10 Psychiatric hospital beds reached their maximum number in England and
11 Wales in 1955 at approximately 150,000. Enoch Powell made his famous
12 'Water Tower' speech, calling for the closure of the old asylums, in 1961.
13 Thereafter bed numbers went into decline, although it was not until the late
14 1980s that the first large hospital was closed.
15

16 With the advent of the policy of community care, acute provision was
17 available in psychiatric wards in District General Hospitals and on small
18 purpose-built units. However, bed numbers have continued to fall in recent
19 times. In the period 2002-2003 to 2007-2008, total numbers of mental health
20 beds fell from 32,753 to 26,928, a reduction of 17% (Keown, 2008). This
21 decrease has not affected all client groups in the same way. People with
22 depression or anxiety are much less likely to be admitted today than even ten
23 years ago and, in some parts of the country, acute hospital care is available
24 only to those with a diagnosis of psychosis.
25

26 A reduction in beds and an increase in people being detained can lead to a
27 volatile climate on wards. The shift has been accompanied by increased use of
28 the Mental Health Act (HMSO, 1983; amended 1995 and 2007; HMSO, 2007)
29 (see Chapter 11). Further, the number of admissions has not declined as fast
30 as the decline in bed numbers leading to some wards having bed occupancy
31 rates of more than 100%, such that people are put on leave or even 'sleep out'
32 on other wards or spend the night in Bed and Breakfast. However, although
33 acute provision has declined in terms of bed numbers and people treated, this
34 is still the greater part of resources committed to mental health.

35 *Current practice*

36 The grey literature is replete with references to the untherapeutic and unsafe
37 nature of acute care. MIND's 'Wardwatch' campaign (MIND, 2004) invited
38 people who had spent time in inpatient wards to write with an account of
39 their experience. Overwhelmingly, ex-service users had found that staff were
40 unwilling to interact, they were not involved in their care and that people felt
41 unsafe (MIND, 2004). Quirk and Lelliot (2000) also found a lack of interaction
42 between staff and patients and a volatile atmosphere characterising the results

1 of the literature they reviewed and their own ethnographic findings (see also
2 Walsh & Boyle, 2009). Another feature of acute inpatient wards is the lack of
3 activity and the crushing boredom that service users experience (MIND, 2004,
4 Rose, 2001).

5
6 It is frequently argued, indeed it is the conclusion of Quirk and Lelliot (2000),
7 that these features of acute wards are a consequence of the policy shift away
8 from hospital care so that only the most unwell and complex service users are
9 admitted to hospital in the first place. However, Sharac and colleagues (2010)
10 reviewed the literature over 40 years, and found these same features,
11 especially lack of interaction between service users and staff, even in the old
12 hospitals. They also uncovered a steady finding over the years of service users
13 spending time in isolation, the corollary of lack of staff/service user
14 interaction.

15
16 The state of affairs on acute mental health wards makes it an urgent clinical,
17 social and economic problem. It is well recognised by frontline staff who say
18 that administrative duties take them away from patient care. It is also well
19 recognised by managers, who have to manage the economic resources as well
20 as deal with high levels of staff turnover, sickness and burnout leading to the
21 use of agency staff who do not know the ward or the patient. However, most
22 of all it is recognised by service users, many of whom find acute wards
23 untherapeutic and unsafe. It is not the case for all wards, there are pockets of
24 good practice where staff and service users have worked together
25 collaboratively to redesign services.

26 **9.2 KEY PROBLEMS REGARDING HOSPITAL CARE**

27 Evidence from qualitative reviews/analyses and surveys addressed the
28 following domains of person-centred care:

- 29
- 30 • involvement in decisions and respect for preferences
 - 31 • clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care
 - 32 • emotional support, empathy and respect
 - 33 • effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals
 - 34 • attention to physical and environmental needs
 - 35 • involvement of, and support for, family and carers
 - 36 • continuity of care and smooth transitions.
- 37

38 No evidence was identified that directly addressed:

- 39
- 40 • fast access to reliable health advice.
- 41

42 For the purposes of the review, themes from the qualitative evidence are
43 summarised only briefly here, with further details provided in Appendix 12.
44 Domains and sources of evidence without themes are not listed below.

1 **9.2.1 Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences**

2 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

3 Whilst service users recognised that the situation on wards was sometimes
4 chaotic and difficult, they still wanted as many rights as they could
5 realistically expect to have in a hospital context:

6
7 *I think the ones, the nurses I've had the most problem with have been the ones*
8 *that are ultra controlling, and I think it's because, when I get ill, my head is*
9 *not in my control. Then if I end up in a situation, say on a section in hospital,*
10 *and somebody tries to take away all the other controls I've got, then it can be*
11 *really difficult. (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])*

12
13 *You see the doctor once a week, for like five minutes, when the doctor does the*
14 *rounds. But there's like ten of them in a room. You go in. You're like Whoa,*
15 *who are these people, and then they start talking to you. They, [smacks table]*
16 *they make a decision about you. They obviously are quite knowledgeable, but*
17 *to you, it seems like what the hell? And they make a decision right you're*
18 *staying. Stay on the same drugs. Go and that's it. (Experiences of psychosis*
19 *[Healthtalkonline, 2011])*

20 *Evidence from surveys*

21 The mental health acute inpatient services survey (Care Quality Commission,
22 2009) (see Chapter 4 for further information about the survey) had four
23 questions relevant to the domain of 'involvement in decisions and respect for
24 preferences' (see Appendix 11 for full results). Taken together, the survey
25 results suggest that many service users are not being fully involved in
26 decisions about their care. For example, 27% were not involved as much as
27 they wanted, and 19% were not given enough time to discuss their condition
28 and treatment with the psychiatrist(s). In addition, 13% did not believe their
29 psychiatrist listened carefully to them, and a further 30% said 'Yes,
30 sometimes'. The situation was similar with regard to nurses listening
31 carefully, with 12% of service users answering 'no' and 40% 'Yes, sometimes'.
32 The benchmark data indicate that there was relatively wide variation in
33 performance between trusts, and all trusts have room to improve.

34 **9.2.2 Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-** 35 **care**

36 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

37 Several service users mentioned how difficult it was to research their
38 condition or the services that were available in hospital:

39
40 *And like, when I was in the hospital I was like, "Can you give me some*
41 *literature about what's going on?" and stuff like that. But there was nothing.*
42 *Yeah. That was horrible too.*

1 [***]
2 *No one sits down and says right this is what's happened. You're experiencing*
3 *this, and blah, blah, blah. No one was there to reassure you.*
4 [***]
5 *And later on I found out there's a gym. You're entitled to benefits. You can*
6 *get a freedom pass, and no one told me any of that. Do you know what I mean.*
7 *No one sat me down and helped me? I was just living, I was just living there.*
8 (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])
9

10 *Evidence from surveys*

11 The mental health acute inpatient services survey (Care Quality Commission,
12 2009) (see Chapter 4 for further information about the survey) had four
13 questions relevant to the domain of 'clear, comprehensible information and
14 support for self-care' (see Appendix 11 for full results). Taken together, the
15 survey results suggest that many service users were not given adequate
16 information about the daily routine of the ward and about the medication
17 they were prescribed. For example, 30% were not told by a member of staff
18 about things such as meal times and visitors when, or soon after, they arrived
19 on the ward. A further 30% felt they were only told about these things to
20 'some extent'. Nearly a quarter of service users felt that the purpose of their
21 medication was not explained in way they could understand, and 48% felt
22 that possible side-effects were not explained properly. Furthermore, 52% of
23 service users were not made aware of how they could make a complaint if
24 they had one. The benchmark data indicate that there was relatively wide
25 variation in performance between trusts, and all trusts have much room to
26 improve.

27 **9.2.3 Emotional support, empathy and respect**

28 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

29 **Barrier: professionals**

30 A key problem noted in hospital care was the characteristics of the
31 professional. Service users felt that there was a lack of rapport with some
32 professionals and felt in some cases that they needed to act in exaggerated
33 ways to get the attention of professionals (Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in
34 preparation]).

35 **Facilitators: professionals**

36 The importance of professional characteristics in hospital care was found in
37 two other guidelines (Alcohol guideline [NCCMH, 2011]; Drug misuse
38 guideline [NCCMH, 2008]). The most important aspect of inpatient treatment
39 noted by service users was the therapeutic relations in particular staff attitude
40 (non-judgemental and empathetic) and support (Alcohol guideline [NCCMH,
41 2011]). Service users in inpatient treatment also reported the positive impact

1 that professionals can have in hospital care where building a rapport with key
2 workers motivated them to remain abstinent (Drug misuse guideline
3 [NCCMH, 2008]).

4 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

5 **Barrier: professionals**

6 Many people found that they received greater support from other inpatients
7 than professionals:

8
9 *...the only kind of really support I have to say I got was from the other*
10 *patients. So you know, there was many a time I was crying on the ward and*
11 *no nurse came to comfort me. It was you know, for the patient. And there was*
12 *one lady, I'll never forget this, she went, she saw that I was crying, she went*
13 *out, to the kind of drinks machine and she bought me back a can of Cola to*
14 *cheer me up. (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])*

15 **Facilitators: professionals**

16 Even under difficult situation, such as being on constant observation,
17 kindness could be shown by professionals which helped:

18
19 *And there was one nurse, there was one nurse I remember very clearly. She*
20 *had a polka dot dress on and she was just so warm. She was always there in*
21 *this empathetic close way, where you felt she wanted to look after me and she*
22 *was going to be nice. (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])*

23 *Evidence from surveys*

24 The mental health acute inpatient services survey (Care Quality Commission,
25 2009) (see Chapter 4 for further information about the survey) had five
26 questions relevant to the domain of 'emotional support, empathy and respect'
27 (see Appendix 11 for full results). The results suggest that most service users
28 (85%) are made to feel welcome when they arrive on the ward, but some are
29 not being treated with respect and getting enough privacy. For example, 9%
30 thought the psychiatrist did not treat them with respect and dignity, while
31 10% thought the same about the nurses. In addition, a further 22% felt the
32 psychiatrists and 34% felt the nurses treated them with respect and dignity
33 'sometimes'. When discussing their condition or treatment, 13% of service
34 users thought they were not given enough privacy and 29% thought they
35 were only sometimes. Importantly, 30% thought that they were treated
36 unfairly during their most recent stay. The benchmark data indicate that there
37 was relatively wide variation in performance between trusts, and all trusts
38 have room to improve.

39 **9.2.4 Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals**

40 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

1 **Facilitator: reduced waiting time and improved support**

2 In a small survey of inpatients (a highly specialist personality disorder
3 hospital treatment unit), the majority thought psychoeducation to be 'helpful,'
4 but thought it could be improved by reducing the waiting time between
5 assessment and feedback and by receiving support after the intervention
6 (ASPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009a]).

7 **Facilitator: more frequent reviews**

8 In a small survey of inpatients (a highly specialist personality disorder
9 hospital treatment unit), the majority thought social problem solving
10 'generally useful,' but wanted more frequent reviews on how well the
11 treatment is going and more consistency in how it is delivered (ASPD
12 guideline [NCCMH, 2009a]).

13 **Facilitator: access to specialists**

14 Service users found access to specialist services improved their perceptions of
15 service provision, and built a sense of belonging due to sharing experiences
16 with other users and stronger relationships with professionals (BPD guideline
17 [NCCMH, 2009b]). A few people had access to group therapy in hospital
18 which they found useful:

19

20 *I was getting to actually talk about some stuff, you know, which was good and*
21 *it was group therapy as well so it was kind of quite helpful to be with other*
22 *people and kind of be like sort of in a way helping each other like you know, yes*
23 *so that was good. (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])*

24 **Barrier: access to healthcare professionals**

25 Service users in one qualitative review found inpatient services intentionally
26 limiting with little access to mental health professionals. In some
27 circumstances this is caused by healthcare professionals not viewing
28 borderline personality disorder as a mental illness, therefore not believing the
29 hospital environment is the right environment for treatment, even though the
30 service user may have thought an inpatient ward would be a helpful
31 environment to provide safety, particularly where other options such as crisis
32 houses and so on are not available:

33

34 *'I have also been one of the lucky few who was in the first instant referred to*
35 *my local hospital, which has very good specialist services such as dual*
36 *diagnosis, an eating disorders unit, a crisis unit and specialist psychotherapy*
37 *services for borderline personality disorder. But I was plagued by long waiting*
38 *lists and being passed from one health professional to another until I was*
39 *given the right treatment' (BPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]).*

40

41 Many service users felt that there was little to do in hospital, there was hardly
42 any contact with staff and they were too medicated to be able to interact with
43 anyone properly. Others felt that they could not recuperate in hospital:

1
2 *...well I used to always think it was a bit strange because when you're being*
3 *detained the last person you see is the Social Worker who normally - [the]*
4 *rationale for you going into the hospital is you need to go in to have a rest.*
5 *There's no way you can rest on an acute unit in Britain, that, that is a sort of*
6 *silly idea. (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])*

7 **Barrier: constant observation**

8 Service users in two studies described the constant observation that occurred,
9 which was experienced as distressing and intolerable (while others felt safe
10 and a reduction of risk). Some service users felt they were merely being
11 watched while in care rather than receiving any therapy for self-harm (Self-
12 harm guideline [NCCMH, in preparation]).

13 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

14 **Barriers: professional**

15 Service users described a mixture of positive and negative experiences. One
16 person said that a psychiatric intensive care unit was 'a place of safety'.
17 Others described a mental health service as a place where they had no
18 responsibilities, where they could 'hand yourself over' to the care of the
19 service.

20
21 Accompanying this, however, was the feeling of being institutionalised:

22
23 *In eight weeks, I very quickly became institutionalised myself. I was scared to*
24 *come out because I was in this enclosed world where I knew what was going to*
25 *happen. There were routines, mealtimes, getting up times, medication times,*
26 *OT [occupational therapy] times. There were routines and I had no*
27 *responsibilities . . . I was in a place where I didn't have to think about*
28 *anything, and nobody could touch me. (Depression Update guideline*
29 *[NCCMH, 2010a])*

30
31 People also had negative experiences of mental health services provided by
32 the NHS, including not feeling cared for (Depression Update guideline
33 [NCCMH, 2010a]).

34
35 One woman wasn't told any detail about her diagnosis of schizophrenia
36 whilst in hospital. Another man felt that he wasn't told in sufficient depth
37 about the possible side effects of his medication (Experiences of psychosis
38 [Healthtalkonline, 2011]).

39 **Barrier: constant observation**

40 The few people who had experienced constant observation found it
41 humiliating. A service user describes his experience:

42

1 *Horrible. You can imagine somebody following you about constantly. It's, it*
2 *really isn't nice to be on. it's ... I don't like it at all. [...]**Can you imagine your*
3 *partner constantly watching you? 24 hours a day. Going to toilet and*
4 *watching you do a toilet. Going to a shower and watching you do a shower.*
5 *Eating. it's not nice.* (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])
6

7 *Evidence from surveys*

8 The mental health acute inpatient services survey (Care Quality Commission,
9 2009) (see Chapter 4 for further information about the survey) had four
10 questions relevant to the domain of 'effective treatment delivered by trusted
11 professionals' (see Appendix 11 for full results). Taken together, the survey
12 results suggest that trust in healthcare professionals could be improved. For
13 example, 21% of service users answered that they did not have confidence
14 and trust in the psychiatrist, and a further 32% answered, 'Yes, to some
15 extent'. Furthermore, 17% did not have confidence and trust in the nurses,
16 and 39% answered 'Yes, sometimes'. When arriving on the ward, only 28%
17 felt the staff 'definitely' knew about them and about any previous care they
18 had received. Under a third (29%) of service users had talking therapy during
19 their stay in hospital, and of those that did, only 50% thought it definitely
20 helped. The benchmark data indicate that there was some variation in
21 performance between trusts, and considerable room for all trusts to improve.

22 **9.2.5 Attention to physical and environmental needs**

23 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

24 **Barrier: physical environment**

25 Some female service users in one study feared being on a mixed ward and
26 some older, adolescent service users in another study had negative
27 experiences of being placed on adult wards (Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in
28 preparation]).

29 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

30 **Barrier: physical environment**

31 Many service users were shocked by the physical environment on the wards.

32

33 *And [my dad] took me to the local Psychiatric Unit and it was a real eye-*
34 *opening experience. It was absolutely filthy there was people laid on the*
35 *corridors, there was double mattresses on single beds, it was really, really*
36 *frightening as well.* (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])
37

38 *Evidence from surveys*

1 The mental health acute inpatient services survey (see Chapter 4 for further
2 information about the survey) had 10 questions relevant to the domain of
3 'attention to physical and environmental needs' (see Appendix 11 for full
4 results). The survey suggests mixed results with regard to physical and
5 environmental needs. For example, although it should not happen, 8% had to
6 at some stage share a sleeping area with service users of the opposite sex.
7 Most (91%) thought the hospital ward was fairly or very clean, and 92%
8 thought the bathroom and toilets were fairly or very clean. However, 35%
9 thought there were not enough activities available during the day on week
10 days, and 54% thought there was not enough during the evenings and
11 weekends. Furthermore, 22% of service users felt that not enough care was
12 taken of their physical health problems. The benchmark data indicate that
13 there was quite a lot of variation in performance between trusts on some
14 questions, and most trusts have room to improve.

15 **9.2.6 Involvement of, and support for, family and carers**

16 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

17 **Barrier: lack of support**

18 Service users with drug misuse problems expressed wanting more support
19 and visits from family, especially for those drug users who were parents.
20 However, in some cases there was an acknowledgement that the inpatient
21 environment was not appropriate for young children (Drug misuse guideline
22 [NCCMH, 2008]).

23 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

24 **Barrier: lack of support**

25 Some service users felt that their family were told little about what had
26 happened to them or the support that was available:

27
28 *So when I got on ward round me parents and me wife were there and they*
29 *said, you know, "What's wrong with [name]?" And they said, "It's*
30 *confidential, ask him." Well I couldn't explain anything because nobody had*
31 *said anything to me. (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])*

32 *Evidence from surveys*

33 The mental health acute inpatient services survey (see Chapter 4 for further
34 information about the survey) had one question relevant to the domain of
35 'involvement of, and support for, family and carers' (see Appendix 11 for full
36 results). The results suggest that more could be done to help service users
37 keep in touch with family or friends, with 15% answering 'no, but I would
38 have liked help' and 39% answering 'yes, to some extent'. The benchmark
39 data indicate that there was some variation in performance between trusts,
40 and all trusts have considerable room to improve.

1 **9.2.7 Continuity of care and smooth transitions**

2 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

3 **Facilitator: information on continued care**

4 In general service users in inpatient care were positive about the
5 arrangements received about their aftercare treatment; however, patients
6 wanted more information about the next phase in their continuity of care
7 (Alcohol guideline [NCCMH, 2011]).

8 **9.2.8 Other themes**

9 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

10 **Facilitator: support for peers**

11 Befriending and supporting other service users was viewed by service users
12 who misuse drugs to be conducive to achieving and maintaining abstinence
13 and increased self-esteem (Drug misuse guideline [NCCMH, 2008]).

14 **9.2.9 Evidence summary**

15 Below is a summary of the evidence found for the key problems associated
16 with hospital care for service users being treated not under the Mental Health
17 Act (HMSO, 2007), categorised according to the dimensions of person-centred
18 care.

19 *Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences*

20 No qualitative evidence was related to this domain, but the survey results
21 suggest that many service users are not being fully involved in decisions
22 about their care.

23 *Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care*

24 No qualitative evidence was related to this domain, but the survey results
25 suggest that many service users are not receiving adequate information about
26 their care.

27 *Emotional support, empathy and respect*

28 The qualitative evidence suggests that healthcare professionals can act as both
29 a barrier and a facilitator in terms of giving emotional support, empathy and
30 respect. The survey results support this view, with a significant proportion
31 not being treated with respect and dignity.

32 *Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals*

33 The qualitative evidence suggests that in hospital many service users
34 experience of care is poor, and more could be done to improve support and
35 review progress. The survey results support these findings, demonstrating

1 that much can done to improve service users trust in healthcare professionals,
2 and to provide effective psychological interventions.

3 *Attention to physical and environmental needs*

4 The qualitative evidence found that a problem with hospital care was the
5 physical environment on wards, including females being placed on mixed
6 wards and adolescents being placed on adult wards. The survey results
7 showed that 8% of service users have had to share a sleeping area with
8 members of the opposite sex. In addition, many service users find that there
9 are insufficient activities available on the ward, especially during the
10 weekends.

11 *Involvement of, and support for, family and carers*

12 The physical environment of hospital care was acknowledged by service users
13 in one qualitative review to be a barrier to involving family and carers in their
14 care as it may not be appropriate for young children. The survey results
15 suggest that much more can be done to help service users stay in touch with
16 family and friends.

17 *Continuity of care and smooth transitions*

18 The qualitative evidence did not reveal major problems relating to continuity
19 of care, but an improvement would be the provision of information on
20 continued care when discharged from hospital care.

21 **9.3 KEY REQUIREMENTS FOR THE PROVISION OF** 22 **HIGH QUALITY SERVICE USER EXPERIENCE**

23 The key requirements (qualitative statements based on the GDG's expert
24 opinion) for the provision of high quality service user experience for hospital
25 care are shown in Table 16.

26

Table 16: Key requirements for the provision of high quality service user experience (hospital care).

Dimensions of person-centred care	Statement
Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users should be involved in all decisions related to their care and treatment both on admission, during their stay in hospital and on discharge. This could include admission to a hospital ward/unit of their choice. • Services users should be encouraged to engage in activities of their preference or need. • Service users should be involved in developing, and have their own copies of their assessment, treatment and discharge plans. These should be written in a clear format and if necessary in the appropriate language. • Have effective mechanisms for complaints and feedback, which are reported at board level. • All complaints should be handled in a timely and efficient

	manner. Service users should be kept fully informed of the progress and outcome of any complaint made.
Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On admission, service users should be orientated to the hospital ward environment; this should include where and how to access facilities related to self-care. This should also include introductions to the other service users. • Accessible and clear information should be provided to service users and, if appropriate their carers regarding their stay in hospital. • Clear information regarding how to make a complaint or comment must be provided to service users at the time of their admission. Related information should be displayed in hospital ward/unit. • Welcome packs should be given to service users being admitted to wards.
Emotional support, empathy and respect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Timely care and treatment should be provided by appropriately trained and empowering staff. • Service users should receive care from staff who recognise and appreciate their cultural and spiritual needs. • Staff should not coerce service users.
Fast access to reliable health advice	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users should have timely access to and support from appropriately trained staff throughout their stay in hospital, this includes 24 hours per day. • There should be a range of appropriate assessment and treatments for service users. • There should be a comprehensive assessment of service users physical healthcare needs. • Access to pharmacy staff re medicine side effects.
Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Staff should undergo appropriate mandatory and supplementary training to provide the best, evidenced-based assessment, care and treatment to service users during their hospital stay. • There should be effective and positive risk assessment and management plans: Service users should be involved in this process.
Attention to physical and environmental needs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • All hospital units/wards should be clean, welcoming and comfortable. • Attention should be paid to the safety and security of service users; this will include single-sex accommodation. • Assessment and treatment of physical healthcare needs.
Involvement of, and support for, family and carers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hospital wards/units should have facilities appropriate for family, carers or children's visits. • Visits should be negotiated between service users, staff and visitor. • Support should be given to families, carers and children during a service users' stay in hospital.
Continuity of care and smooth transitions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users should be involved in all planning related to any discharges or transfers of care. • Any transfers or discharges should be to the most appropriate service. • Families and/or carers should be involved and notified of any plans to discharge or transfer a service user, if this has been agreed by the service user in advance.

1

2 **9.4 EVIDENCE TO RECOMMENDATIONS**

3 The problems identified by the qualitative reviews and analyses and the
4 surveys revealed a broad range of problems which resonated with the
5 experience of the guidance group. For example, poor involvement in decision
6 making, lack of time given to discuss treatment, lack of support to keep in
7 touch with family, not being listened to and lack of information about
8 conditions, treatments, side-effects, ward operations and complaints
9 procedures. Service users found it difficult to build a therapeutic relationship
10 with some professionals and felt that they were not always given emotional
11 support, empathy, respect and privacy. Access to mental health professionals
12 and interaction with others was thought to be limited and insufficient
13 activities were provided. Some service users felt they had no confidence and
14 trust in psychiatrists and nurses. Service users often felt that staff on the ward
15 did not know who they were or about any previous care they had received.
16 Finally, there were problems reported of service users being placed on mixed
17 wards and adolescents placed on adult wards.

18

19 The GDG expressed a wide range of service user requirements, such as
20 service users being involved in decisions relating to their care and treatment,
21 including admission into a hospital ward of their choice; having copies of
22 their assessment, treatment and discharge plans; having an effective and
23 positive risk assessment management plan, having facilities and support for
24 family or carer visits; having complaints handled efficiently; procedures
25 explained clearly and an effort to have service users orientated to the hospital
26 ward environment.

27

28 The GDG discussed the following issues that apply across all points on the
29 care pathway, but were of particular importance to community care. The
30 recommendations for these aspects of the experience of care included the
31 need for health and social care professionals to engage service users and
32 carers in an atmosphere of optimism and hope, with empathy and without
33 judgement; to have discussions in a confidential environment where privacy
34 and dignity are respected; to foster autonomy in the service user and to
35 provide information about treatments, services, side effects. Health and social
36 care professionals should discuss if and how the service user would like to
37 have the support and involvement of their family or carer. When working
38 with people using mental health services and their family and carers ensure
39 that health care professionals are easily identifiable and approachable and
40 that they refer to service users using their preferred name and title. Also
41 health care professionals should use clear and comprehensible language that
42 service users can understand. Ensure that service users who are parents are
43 provided with information regarding childcare support if applicable.

44

1 Areas specifically of importance to improve the experience of hospital care
2 included providing an atmosphere of hope and optimism; focusing on the
3 emotional and psychological needs of service users; providing information to
4 service users and their family or carers about treatment plans, activities and
5 services available; an orientation of the hospital ward and procedures should
6 be offered and more activities at evenings and weekends should be made
7 available. Service users should be involved in decisions for their care and a
8 formal assessment should occur within two hours of admission, followed by
9 daily sessions with a healthcare professional and an option of weekly sessions
10 with a consultant. Regular multidisciplinary meetings to discuss the
11 management of care should take place and the trust should ensure that
12 inpatient care includes access to all treatments recommended in NICE
13 guidance.

14 **9.5 RECOMMENDATIONS**

15 **9.5.1 Practice recommendations relating specifically to hospital** 16 **care**

17 **9.5.1.1** When a service user enters hospital, greet them using the name and
18 title they prefer, in an atmosphere of hope and optimism, with a clear
19 focus on their emotional and psychological needs, and their
20 preferences. [QS12]

21 **9.5.1.2** Give verbal and written information to service users, and their families
22 or carers where agreed by the service user, about:

- 23 • the hospital and the ward in which the service user will stay
- 24 • treatments, activities and services available
- 25 • expected contact from health and social care professionals
- 26 • rules of the ward (including substance misuse policy)
- 27 • service users' rights, responsibilities and freedom to move
- 28 around the ward and outside
- 29 • meal times
- 30 • visiting arrangements.

31 Make sure there is enough time for the service user to ask questions.

- 1 **9.5.1.3** Undertake shared decision-making routinely with service users in
2 hospital, including, whenever possible, service users who are subject
3 to the Mental Health Act (1983; amended 1995 and 2007). [QS15]
- 4 **9.5.1.4** Undertake formal assessment and admission processes within 2 hours
5 of arrival. [QS13]
- 6 **9.5.1.5** Shortly after service users arrive in hospital, show them around the
7 ward and introduce them to the health and social care team as soon as
8 possible and within the first 12 hours if the admission is at night. This
9 should include the named healthcare professional who will be
10 involved throughout the person's stay. [QS14]
- 11 **9.5.1.6** Offer service users in hospital:
- 12 • daily one-to-one sessions lasting at least 1 hour with their named
13 healthcare professional
 - 14 • regular (at least weekly) one-to-one sessions lasting at least 20
15 minutes with their consultant. [QS16]
- 16 **9.5.1.7** Ensure that the overall coordination and management of care takes
17 place at a regular multidisciplinary meeting led by the consultant and
18 team manager with full access to the service user's electronic record.
19 These meetings should not be used to see service users or carers,
20 unless the service user specifically requests this in addition to their
21 daily meeting with their named healthcare professional and their
22 weekly one-to-one meeting with their consultant. [QS16]
- 23 **9.5.1.8** Trusts should ensure that service users in hospital have access to the
24 pharmacological, psychological and psychosocial treatments
25 recommended in NICE guidance provided by competent health or
26 social care professionals. Psychological and psychosocial treatments
27 may be provided by health and social care professionals who work
28 with the service user in the community.
- 29 **9.5.1.9** Ensure that service users in hospital have access to a wide range of
30 meaningful and culturally-appropriate occupations and activities 7
31 days per week, and not restricted to 9am to 5pm. These should
32 include creative and leisure activities, exercise, self-care and
33 community access activities (where appropriate). Activities should be
34 facilitated by appropriately trained health or social care professionals.
35 [QS17]
- 36 **9.5.1.10** Ensure that service users have access to the internet during their stay
37 in hospital.

1 **9.5.1.11** All health and social care professionals who work in a hospital setting
2 should be trained as a group to use the same patient-centred
3 approach to treatment and care, including 'customer care'. [QS8]

4 **9.5.1.12** Service users receiving community care before hospital admission
5 should be routinely visited while in hospital by the health and social
6 care professionals responsible for their community care.

7 **9.5.1.13** Ensure that all service users in hospital have access to former
8 inpatients who can act as advocates and regularly feed back to ward
9 professionals any problems experienced by current service users on
10 that ward.

11 **9.5.1.14** Ensure that hospital menus include a choice of foods, and that these
12 are acceptable to service users from a range of ethnic, cultural and
13 religious backgrounds. Consider including service users in planning
14 menus.

15 **9.5.2 Practice recommendations relating to hospital care and all** 16 **points on the pathway**

17 **9.5.2.1** When working with people using mental health services and their
18 family or carers:

- 19 • ensure that you are easily identifiable (for example, by wearing
20 appropriate identification) and approachable
- 21 • address service users using the name and title they prefer
- 22 • clearly explain any clinical language and check that the service
23 user understands what is being said
- 24 • take into account communication needs, including those of
25 people with learning disabilities, sight or hearing problems or
26 language difficulties and provide independent interpreters (that
27 is, someone who does not have a relationship with the service
28 user) or communication aids if required.

29 *Involving families and carers*

30 **9.5.2.2** Ensure that service users who are parents with caring responsibilities
31 receive support to access the full range of mental health and social
32 care services, including:

- 33 • childcare to enable them to attend appointments, groups
34 and therapy sessions
- 35 • supported accommodation for families
- 36 • hospital care in local mother and baby units for women in
37 the late stages of pregnancy and within a year of childbirth.

38 *Engaging service users in improving care*

1 **9.5.2.3** When providing training about any aspect of mental health and social
2 care:

- 3 • involve people using mental health services in the planning
4 and delivery of training
- 5 • ensure that all training aims to improve the quality and
6 experience of care for people using mental health services;
7 evaluate training with this as an outcome.

8 **9.5.2.4** Trusts should consider employing service users to train teams of health
9 and social care professionals and supporting staff who may come into
10 contact with service users such as receptionists, administrators,
11 secretaries and housekeeping staff, in 'person-centred care' or
12 'customer care'. Such training should be tailored to the needs of
13 people who attend mental health services and should be evaluated
14 using experience of care as an outcome. [QS5 & QS8]

15 **9.5.2.5** Trust managers should employ service users to monitor the experience
16 of using mental health services, especially inpatient services, for
17 example by paying them to undertake exit interviews with service
18 users who have recently left a service. Offer service users training to
19 do this. [QS5]

20 **9.5.2.6** Service managers should routinely commission reports on the
21 experience of care across non-acute and acute care pathways,
22 including the experience of being treated under the Mental Health
23 Act (1983; amended 1995 and 2007). These reports should be routinely
24 communicated to the trust board. Data should be collected to allow
25 direct comparison of the experience of care for all genders, for
26 different ethnic groups and for other minority groups. [QS5]

27 **9.5.3 Research recommendations**

28 **9.5.3.1** For people receiving adult mental health hospital care, what is the
29 impact of an intensive treatment approach, including full access to
30 psychological therapies recommended in NICE guidelines, training
31 staff in person-centred care and providing a good range of occupation
32 and activity 7 days a week? Outcomes would include exit interviews
33 to determine the impact on service user experience, including
34 perceived safety, estimates of quality of life and global functioning,
35 basic clinical outcomes and costs.

36 **9.5.3.2** For people receiving adult mental health hospital care, what activities
37 and occupations do service users want when staying on inpatient
38 wards?

1 **9.5.3.3** For people receiving adult mental health hospital care, what is the
2 effect of incorporating past service users as trained advocates
3 compared to treatment as usual? Outcomes, determined by survey,
4 exit interviews by trained past service users and selected in depth
5 interviews, should include the experience of care, perceived safety,
6 extent of perceived control over clinical decisions by service users,
7 including those treated under the MHA and those treated informally.

8

1 10. DISCHARGE AND TRANSFER 2 OF CARE

3 10.1 INTRODUCTION

4 This chapter provides evidence about the key problems relating to discharge
5 from hospital or community care, and transfer of care, and the key
6 requirements for high quality service user experience. Recommendations for
7 best practice and recommendations for research can be found at the end of the
8 chapter.

9
10 It is understandable that staff working in health and social care services will
11 focus on the treatment and care they provide while they are working with a
12 service user. When an episode of care comes to an end, less consideration may
13 be given to preparing someone to leave or to the new service that others will
14 provide. However, from the perspective of a service user, transfer or
15 discharge to another service is of central part of the experience of the care
16 they receive. The development of new specialist services in Britain means that
17 service users are experiencing a greater number of transfers between different
18 services than ever before. As with most changes, transfers and discharges can
19 be a cause of uncertainty and anxiety. Transfer of care may be made more
20 difficult if it was prompted by deterioration in a person's mental health, for
21 instance when a decision is made that someone who has been receiving out-
22 patient treatment requires more intensive support from a crisis or home
23 treatment team. While discharge from a service is usually prompted by an
24 improvement in a person's mental health some, like discharge from an
25 inpatient unit, may still take place at a difficult time. Other forms of
26 discharge, like that from secondary care to primary care, may result in a
27 reduction in the level of care that people receive. Discharge from secondary
28 care mental health services raises important questions for service users and
29 carers about how they can access services again should the need arise.

30 *Current practice*

31 Previous research has shown that careful consideration of the process through
32 which a person's care is transferred from one service to another is an
33 important part of delivering continuity of care. Failure of communication
34 between staff in different services can lead to service users being asked to
35 repeat information that they have already given or to unnecessary disruption
36 in the treatment they receive. Previous experiences of loss or rejection may
37 lead some service users to fear that a transfer or discharge will lead to their
38 needs not being met or prevent them from accessing services in the future. If a
39 service user has been able to establish a trusting and supportive relationship
40 with their current provider, they may worry about how they will cope when
41 they lose contact with this person.

42

1 Evidence about increased vulnerability of service users following discharge
2 from services come from a number of studies which have shown that levels of
3 suicide are high in the period immediately following discharge from inpatient
4 mental health units (Appleby *et al.*, 1999; Crawford, 2004; King *et al.*, 2001).
5 Associations between suicide and 'unplanned' discharge, short admissions
6 and the length of the period that elapses between discharge and follow-up,
7 emphasise the importance of preparation, communication and after care in
8 reducing any negative impact associated with such changes. Discharge from
9 secondary care to primary services is also a significant point in a person's
10 treatment. As well as ensuring that service users and carers have information
11 about medication and other treatments, knowledge of how future contact
12 with secondary care services can be accessed if it is needed is required.
13 Problems that arise in sharing information between primary and secondary
14 care services highlight the need to make sure that service users and carers are
15 given the information they need once they have been discharged from
16 secondary care.

17 **10.2 KEY PROBLEMS REGARDING DISCHARGE AND** 18 **TRANSFER OF CARE**

19 Evidence from qualitative reviews/analyses and surveys addressed the
20 following domains of person-centred care:

- 21
- 22 • involvement in decisions and respect for preferences
- 23 • clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care
- 24 • emotional support, empathy and respect
- 25 • fast access to reliable health advice
- 26 • involvement of, and support for, family and carers
- 27 • continuity of care and smooth transitions.
- 28

29 No evidence was identified that directly addressed:

- 30
- 31 • effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals
- 32 • attention to physical and environmental needs.
- 33

34 For the purposes of the review, themes from the qualitative evidence are
35 summarised only briefly here, with further details provided in Appendix 12.
36 Domains and sources of evidence without themes are not listed below.

37 **10.2.1 Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences**

38 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

39 **Facilitator: service user involvement**

1 Service users acknowledged that it was important that they were included in
2 the planning of their aftercare (Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in
3 preparation]).

4 **10.2.2 Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-** 5 **care**

6 *Evidence from surveys*

7 The mental health acute inpatient services survey (Care Quality Commission,
8 2009) (see Chapter 4 for further information about the survey) had two
9 questions relevant to the domain 'clear, comprehensible information and
10 support for self-care' (see Appendix 11 for full results). The results indicate
11 that about a quarter (26%) of service users in hospital feel they are not given
12 enough notice about their discharge, and nearly a third (29%) are not given
13 information about how to get help in a crisis after they leave hospital. The
14 benchmark data indicate that there was relatively wide variation in
15 performance between trusts, and all trusts have a room to improve.

16 **10.2.3 Emotional support, empathy and respect**

17 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

18 **Barriers: professionals**

19 Service users stated in two studies that aftercare was often not arranged or
20 acknowledged by service staff which led to feelings of abandonment (Self-
21 harm guideline [NCCMH, in preparation]).

22 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

23 **Barriers: lack of support**

24 On leaving hospital, many people could feel abandoned by supportive
25 services but monitored by services in what some people felt was a punitive
26 manner:

27

28 *I was never allowed a, a CPN, I was never allowed a Social Worker, because I,*
29 *I used to ask for them, and they had said, "No you can make your way to the*
30 *centre." But sometimes I would be so bombarded with voices and paranoid to*
31 *go out that I might go missing for six to eight weeks and nobody would ever*
32 *come and see if I was okay, well me parents would obviously but this, the*
33 *services just abandoned me at that point.*

34

35 *I mean if you take the medication, okay if you don't take it and there's a*
36 *problem, like I don't know, you might violent, throw a glass of wine in*
37 *someone's face. [...] If someone contacts Social Services they also have to get*
38 *involved, and they have to come and meet you, they have to make an*
39 *assessment. Is he okay? Is he not okay? What happened? What didn't*

1 *happen? With an ordinary member of the public you don't have that hanging*
2 *over you. (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])*

3 **Facilitators: professionals**

4 Some service users were supported on coming out of hospital to access
5 courses and support groups. Others had regular contact arranged from
6 community teams so they didn't come back into hospital (Experiences of
7 psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011]).

8 **10.2.4 Fast access to reliable health advice**

9 *Evidence from surveys*

10 The mental health acute inpatient services survey (Care Quality Commission,
11 2009) (see Chapter 4 for further information about the survey) had one
12 question relevant to the domain 'fast access to reliable health advice' (see
13 Appendix 11 for full results). The results indicate that nearly a third (31%) of
14 service users do not have the phone number of someone from their local NHS
15 Mental Health Service that they can phone out of office hours. The benchmark
16 data indicate that there was considerable variation in performance between
17 trusts, and all trusts have room to improve.

18 **10.2.5 Attention to physical and environmental needs**

19 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

20 **Barrier: lack of support**

21 Many service users stressed the difficulties of dealing with housing, benefits,
22 finances and employment when they came out of hospital and would have
23 liked more support to help deal with this:

24
25 *Yeah. It was very difficult, because like life, there's no like, no one's standing*
26 *there handing it to you on a plate. So you have to be quite resourceful, so I*
27 *read a lot of websites. I went to book shops and read some books. And recently*
28 *I've joined a group. Like a help group, which will help, and obviously I had my*
29 *nurse and my doctor which helped me once, once I came out. So that was good.*
30 *I had a lot of support with getting the areas of my life fixed up. So finances.*
31 *Career. That kind of thing. Like a lot of professional support. (Experiences of*
32 *psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])*

33 **10.2.6 Involvement of, and support for, family and carers**

34 *Evidence from surveys*

35 The mental health acute inpatient services survey (Care Quality Commission,
36 2009) (see Chapter 4 for further information about the survey) had one
37 question relevant to the domain 'involvement of, and support for, family and
38 carers' (see Appendix 11 for full results). The results indicate that a

1 considerable proportion of service users felt that hospital staff did not (21%)
2 or only to some extent (31%) take their family or home situation into account
3 when planning their discharge. The benchmark data indicate that there was
4 relatively wide variation in performance between trusts, and all trusts have a
5 lot of room to improve.

6 **10.2.7 Continuity of care and smooth transitions**

7 *Evidence from qualitative reviews*

8 **Barrier: change to structure**

9 Service users in two studies felt that leaving a therapeutic community was
10 difficult, particularly adjusting from a 24-hour structure to independent living
11 and being required to leave before feeling ready. Abrupt, unmanaged
12 endings/transfers are problematic and work better if they planned in
13 advance, structured and have opportunities for follow and easier re-entry if
14 needed (BPD guideline [NCCMH, 2009b]).

15
16 The need for more continuity of care was found in another guideline that
17 reported on six studies that discussed service users wanting more enhanced
18 continued care and the lack of currently available continued care. The lack of
19 continuity of care impacted negatively on their attitudes towards future help-
20 seeking and to their self-esteem (Self-harm guideline [NCCMH, in
21 preparation]).

22 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

23 **Barrier: lack of support**

24 One service user describes his experience of wanting to leave hospital:

25
26 *I got very bored and asked if I could leave, and they said, "Well we'd really like*
27 *to keep you a bit longer, but you know, as you're not on a section..." Yes. I*
28 *could leave whenever I wanted to. I'm looking back on it, I think I wish I*
29 *stayed a bit longer, because I came home and I got a job, but I couldn't do the*
30 *job, you know. It was quite a simple job but I couldn't get the hang of it. And I*
31 *went on the sick and I was just wandering, I just remember wandering around*
32 *the streets, and because there wasn't any day centres or anything like that to*
33 *go to. (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011].)*

34
35 A few service users mentioned that their medication could be late and this
36 had unnecessarily upsetting consequences:

37
38 *I've been discharged or sent home on weekend leave without any medication.*
39 *And become physically quite ill, and that, and you know, had to ferry myself*
40 *back in and that to get something back in my system. (Experiences of*
41 *psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])*

1 **Facilitator: professional**

2 Whilst some service users described difficult challenges and situations they
3 had to face on coming out of hospital, others talked about the support they
4 received:

5
6 *And from being discharged from hospital, I was taken to the care of the local
7 community mental health team. And had a very, very good psychologist, who
8 I used to see every week and just discuss things with. And work things
9 through.*

10
11 *...so she [key worker] was very keen to have me go to [name of clinic] because
12 she thought that that would be you know be helpful. So I went there
13 straightaway as like an inpatient for a week but they sort of said you don't
14 need to stay here as an inpatient you can come back to the CBT, into the
15 therapy so I kind of did that quite regularly for at least a couple of months [...]
16 and it was really helpful in a lot of ways, it was a bit stressful, still a bit weird
17 but it was helpful and I was getting to actually talk about some stuff.*

18 (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])

19 *Evidence from surveys*

20 The mental health acute inpatient services survey (see Chapter 4 for further
21 information about the survey) had two questions relevant to the domain
22 'continuity of care and smooth transitions' (see Appendix 11 for full results).
23 The results indicate that a considerable proportion (22%) of service users have
24 had their discharge delayed. Then after being discharged, 25% are not
25 contacted for at least two weeks. The benchmark data indicate that there was
26 some variation in performance between trusts, especially with regard to the
27 question about delayed discharge, with some trusts performing very well.

28 **10.2.8 Evidence summary**

29 Below is a summary of the evidence found for the key problems associated
30 with discharge of care for service users not detained under the Mental Health
31 Act (HMSO, 2007), categorised according to the dimensions of person-centred
32 care.

33 *Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences*

34 One qualitative review found that an improvement that would enhance
35 service users' experience of care was if they were involved in the planning of
36 their aftercare.

37 *Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care*

38 No qualitative evidence was found that related to this domain, but the survey
39 results suggest that many service users are not getting adequate information
40 regarding discharge.

41 *Emotional support, empathy and respect*

1 One qualitative review found that a barrier to discharge was when healthcare
2 professionals did not arrange or acknowledge their aftercare.

3 *Fast access to reliable health advice*

4 No qualitative evidence was found that related to this domain, but the survey
5 results suggest that many service users are not given the phone number of
6 someone they can call out of office hours after they are discharged.

7 *Involvement of, and support for, family and carers*

8 No qualitative evidence was found that related to this domain, but the survey
9 results suggest that many service users feel that their family or home situation
10 are not taken into account when discharge is planned.
11

12 **10.3 KEY REQUIREMENTS FOR THE PROVISION OF** 13 **HIGH QUALITY SERVICE USER EXPERIENCE**

14 The key requirements (qualitative statements based on the GDG's expert
15 opinion) for the provision of high quality service user experience for
16 discharge and transfer from community care are shown in Table 17. The key
17 requirements for discharge and transfer from hospital care are shown in Table
18 18.
19

Table 17: Key requirements for the provision of high quality service user experience (discharge and transfer from community care).

Dimensions of person-centred care	Statement
Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users should be involved in all decisions around discharge or transfer planning. • Planning for discharge or transfer should begin at the beginning of the intervention or at the earliest opportunity following this. • Service users should have the opportunity in advance to agree a contingency plan if the intervention prematurely ends (with the service user taking their own unplanned discharge).
Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users should have clear information provided about all possible support options available post-discharge or transfer to enable joint and informed choices to be made. • Service users should be provided with clear information about how they can access the service again if arrangements post-discharge do not work out or things deteriorate. • Service users should have clear information provided about the referral pathways and processes for any services they are being discharged or transferred to (this should include information about possible waiting times, assessment process, intervention type, time-scale of intervention).
Emotional support, empathy and respect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • It should be acknowledged with service users that discharges and transfers are often an anxiety provoking time. Service users should be provided with support through this process, having the opportunities to discuss concerns as well as other issues

	<p>evoked by this ending.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Where an intervention has been medium to long-term then a gradual phasing out of appointments may be preferable with the options of follow-up and top-up made available.
Fast access to reliable health advice	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users should be provided with the contact details of the out of hour's service as part of their discharge care. • Service users should be informed of the most effective way to re-refer themselves to the service they are being discharged or transferred from and a re-referral is needed. • Services users should be made aware of their first contact after leaving (either with new service or follow up from service being discharged from) and this should be within 72 hours of leaving a service. • Service users should be made given the date of the next CPA review following discharge or transfer of care. • A simple and direct re-referral route should be made available to service users where appropriate. • Service users should have the opportunity to be reviewed or receive a 'top-up' appointment at the service they have recently been discharged or transferred from. • Service users should have access to a 24 hour telephone out of hours support service.
Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users (and carers where the service user agrees) should agree (and receive) a written discharge plan. A discharge plan should include: i) plans to meet the identified financial, social support, medication, housing and transport needs; ii) a clearly identified and agreed service support package - including a follow up appointment within 72 hours, a named point of contact, access to out of hours support, and information about possible re-referral following crisis or identified need for more treatment.
Attention to physical and environmental needs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users should have their physical and environmental needs addressed as part of CPA and discharge planning; this includes finance, housing, social support, and transport needs. • Service users should be informed of their entitlement to a formal community care assessment and arranged if the service user requests it.
Involvement of, and support for, family and carers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Family members and carers should have the opportunity to be involved in discharge planning meetings at the service user's choice.
Continuity of care and smooth transitions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users should not be discharged or transferred without a joint discharge planning meeting and written discharge plan. • Discharge or transfer of care should not be abrupt and unplanned - at least 48 hours should be given. • Service users (and carers where the service user wishes) should take part in a joint discharge planning meeting that identifies/considers financial, social and psychological support, medication, housing and transport needs.

1
2

Table 18: Key requirements for the provision of high quality service user experience (discharge and transfer from hospital care)

Dimensions of person-centred care	Statement
Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users should be involved in all decisions around discharge or transfer planning. • Planning for discharge or transfer should begin at the beginning of the intervention or admission or at the earliest opportunity following this. • Service users should have the opportunity in advance to agree a contingency plan if the admission prematurely ends (with the service user taking their own unplanned discharge).
Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users should have clear information provided about all possible support options available post-discharge or transfer to enable joint and informed choices to be made. • Service users should be provided with clear information about how they can access the inpatient service again if arrangements post-discharge do not work out or things deteriorate. • Service users should have clear information provided about the referral pathways and processes for any services they are being discharged or transferred to (this should include information about possible waiting times, assessment process, intervention type, time-scale of intervention).
Emotional support, empathy and respect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • It should be acknowledged with service users that discharges and transfers are often an anxiety provoking time. Service users should be provided with support through this process, having the opportunities to discuss concerns as well as other issues evoked by this ending. • Service users should have the opportunity to experience short term periods of leave with the knowledge that they will still have their bed available if the leave proves unmanageable.
Fast access to reliable health advice	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users should be provided with the contact details of the out of hours service as part of their discharge care. • Service users should be informed of the most effective way to re-refer themselves to the inpatient service they are being discharged or transferred from and a re-referral is needed. • Services users should be made aware of their first contact after leaving (either with new service or follow up from service being discharged from) and this should be within 72 hours of leaving a service. • Service users should be made given the date of the next CPA review following discharge or transfer of care. • A simple and direct re-referral route should be made available to service users where appropriate. • Service users should have access to a 24 hour telephone out of hours support service.
Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users (and carers where the service user agrees) should agree (and receive) a written discharge plan. A discharge plan should include: i) plans to meet the identified financial, social support, medication, housing and transport needs; ii) a clearly identified and agreed service support package – including a follow up appointment within 72 hours, a named point of contact, access to out of hours support, and information about possible re-referral following crisis or identified need for more

	treatment.
Attention to physical and environmental needs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users should have their physical and environmental needs addressed as part of CPA and discharge planning; this includes finance, housing, social support, and transport needs. • Service users should be informed of their entitlement to a formal community care assessment and it should be arranged if the service user requests it.
Involvement of, and support for, family and carers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Family members and carers should have the opportunity to be involved in discharge planning meetings at the service user's choice.
Continuity of care and smooth transitions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users should not be discharged or transferred without a joint discharge planning meeting and written discharge plan. • Discharge or transfer of care should not be abrupt and unplanned (and should not be premature in order to benefit the service/make space available) at least 48 hours should be given. • Service users (and carers where the service user wishes) should take part in a joint discharge planning meeting that identifies/considers financial, social and psychological support, medication, housing and transport.

1

2 10.4 EVIDENCE TO RECOMMENDATIONS

3 The qualitative reviews, analyses and surveys outlined a number of key
4 problems. These included a lack of forewarning and inadequate information
5 about discharge, a lack of service user involvement in planning their aftercare,
6 poor continuity of care including a lack of information about how or who to
7 seek help from in a crisis, and a lack of support with returning to work and
8 home. Finally, many service users felt unprepared for discharge due to a lack
9 of planning and abrupt changes to their daily routine.

10

11 The GDG recommended a number of targets for improving the experience of
12 discharge and transfer of care in mental health services. Some of the more
13 fundamental targets for improvement included the following: including
14 service users in the planning of their own discharge and transfer of care,
15 including the provision of a clear and explicit discharge plan, discharge and
16 transfers should be planned at the earliest opportunity and at least 48 hours
17 notice should be given between notification of discharge and leaving a ward,
18 clear information about support options, including information about which
19 services could still be accessed, and contact details of the out of hour's service.
20 Some other key requirements were aspirational in nature, such as access to a
21 24-hour telephone out of hours support service, and joint discharge plans that
22 consider the financial, social and psychological support, medication, housing
23 and transport needs of the service user. Finally, service users should have the
24 opportunity to experience short term periods of leave with the knowledge
25 that they will still have their bed available if the leave proves unmanageable.

26

27 On reviewing the key problems and needs of service users the guidance
28 group identified a number of key issues that relate to all points on the care
29 pathway, but were of particular importance to discharge and transfer of care.

1 The recommendations for these areas of experience of care included
2 promoting active participation in treatment decisions, providing information
3 about treatments and services for their mental health problem and
4 maintaining continuity of individual therapeutic relationships.

5
6 Other aspects of improving the experience of care that were of particular
7 importance to discharge and transfer of care included discussing with the
8 service user beforehand, changes that will take place with the withdrawal of
9 treatments and services and the transition from one service to another; having
10 a care plan that provides access to services in times of crisis; understanding
11 the home situation of a service user before they are discharged; ensuring
12 support is provided during the referral and giving at least 48 hours notice
13 before their date of discharge.

1 **10.5 RECOMMENDATIONS**

2 **10.5.1 Clinical practice recommendations relating specifically to**
3 **discharge and transfer of care**

4 **10.5.1.1** Anticipate that withdrawal and ending of treatments or services, and
5 transition from one service to another, may evoke strong emotions
6 and reactions in people using mental health services. Ensure that:

- 7 • such changes are discussed carefully beforehand with the
8 service user (and their family or carers if appropriate) and
9 are structured and phased
- 10 • the care plan supports effective collaboration with social
11 care and other care providers during endings and
12 transitions, and includes details of how to access services in
13 times of crisis
- 14 • when referring a service user for an assessment in other
15 services (including for psychological treatment), they are
16 supported during the referral period and arrangements for
17 support are agreed beforehand with them.

18 **10.5.1.2** Agree discharge plans with the service user and include contingency
19 plans in the event of problems arising after discharge. Ensure that a
20 24-hour helpline is available to service users so that they can discuss
21 any problems arising after discharge. [QS18]

22 **10.5.1.3** Before discharge or transfer of care, ensure that any involved family
23 or carers are informed.

24 **10.5.1.4** Assess the home situation of the service user before they are
25 discharged from inpatient care.

26 **10.5.1.5** Give service users clear information about all possible support
27 options available to them after discharge or transfer of care.

28 **10.5.1.6** Give service users at least 48 hours' notice of the date of their
29 discharge from a ward. [QS18]

30 **10.5.1.7** When preparing a service user for discharge, consider encouraging
31 them to contact the local patient advocacy and liaison service (PALS)
32 to enquire about being trained as an advocate or becoming involved
33 in monitoring services.

34 **10.5.2 Research recommendations**

1 **10.5.2.1** For people using adult mental health services, what is the experience
2 of discharge from community teams to primary care, and from
3 inpatient settings to community teams and to primary care? The
4 study would aim to characterise the ways in which discharge
5 currently happens and its impact upon the service users experience,
6 rates of re-admission as these relate to different approaches to
7 discharge, and treatment concordance.

8

9

10

11. DETENTION UNDER THE MENTAL HEALTH ACT

11.1 INTRODUCTION

This chapter provides evidence about the key problems relating to assessment, referral and treatment under a section of the Mental Health Act (MHSO, 2007), and the key requirements for high quality service user experience. Recommendations for best practice and recommendations for research can be found at the end of the chapter.

The 1959 Mental Health Act (HMSO, 1959) introduced the possibility of patients being treated informally. Prior to this, all service users in hospital were on an 'order'. The Mental Health Act 1983 (HMSO, 1983) reinforced the status of informal patient, but also gave some rights to those detained, most notably the right to appeal and to have written information on these rights. The 2007 amendments to the 1983 Act (HMSO, 1983; amended 2007) introduced, for the first time, the possibility of compulsory treatment outside hospital – so-called Community Treatment Orders. In the first 18 months after their introduction, just over 2,000 people were subject to these orders, far in excess of what had been predicted.

Although the trend has been for beds to close and admissions to reduce, the trend for involuntary admissions has been upwards since 1983, both in actual numbers and as a proportion of all admissions. Keown and colleagues (2008) studied the decade 1996-2006 and found that involuntary admissions increased by 20% from 42,844 to 51,361. The number of 'place of safety' detentions in the same period increased by 189%. Given the pressure on beds identified in Chapter 9, this means that many wards have a majority of service users who are detained.

Current practice

The Mental Health Acts (HMSO, 1959; 1983; amended 1995 and 2007) are about compulsory detention and compulsory treatment, and the main treatment is medication. The most controversial, for service users, form of compulsory treatment is control and restraint and forced medication. In practice, there are three situations in which this might be used. The first is during admission if the person is being taken from home and the police and a psychiatrist are involved. Secondly, if a service user refuses oral medication, injectable versions may be given by force. This may contain an element of surprise and shock for the service user if there is a time lag between the refusal and the injection as they may have forgotten refusing the oral medication or not expected it to have this consequence. Finally, control and restraint and rapid tranquilisation may be used if an incident of violence, or

1 more rarely self-harm, is anticipated and this is recommended by NICE (see
2 Violence, NICE clinical guideline 25) in the case of an imminent violent. The
3 Royal College of Psychiatrists counsels that this practice should be a 'last
4 resort' but anecdotal evidence is that it is more widespread than this.

5
6 There is evidence that staff and patients have different views of what leads to
7 compulsory treatment episodes. Duxbury (2002) found that staff attributed
8 violent incidents to characteristics of the patients – their illness or
9 demographic features such as being a young man. Service users, on the other
10 hand, saw compulsory medication as a heavy-handed response to
11 understandable pressures such as being cooped up all day in a stuffy hospital
12 ward where they did not want to be. Furthermore, service users may find
13 treatment, especially some forms of medication, more harmful than helpful
14 for them, and this augments their negative feelings about being detained.

15
16 No area of mental health services is more controversial or challenging than
17 detention and compulsion. It is a serious matter to deprive someone of their
18 liberty and a serious matter to use physical force even if both of these are
19 justified by appeals to the patient's 'best interest' and backed up by law. It is
20 not possible to use control and restraint and rapid tranquilisation with
21 'dignity and respect'. Nor is it possible to know which of the drugs the
22 patients are forcibly prescribed will suit them and which they will do literally
23 anything to avoid, including, but not limited to, escaping or absconding. This
24 is hardly surprising when side effects such as akathisia have been linked with
25 suicide (Van Putten & Marder, 1987). This can also be the case with newer
26 drugs. No other group of patients in medicine are subject to this and so
27 safeguards for this group are of paramount importance.

28 **11.2 KEY PROBLEMS REGARDING DETENTION** 29 **UNDER THE MENTAL HEALTH ACT**

30 An important finding from both the qualitative and survey evidence was that
31 people often do not know whether they were being voluntarily or
32 compulsorily assessed, referred, admitted and treated under a section of the
33 Mental Health Act (HMSO, 2007). Therefore, it is difficult to classify some
34 themes from the qualitative evidence as being appropriate to this chapter or
35 previous chapters. What evidence from qualitative reviews/analyses and
36 surveys that could be classified here, addressed the following domains of
37 person-centred care:

- 38
- 39 • involvement in decisions and respect for preferences
- 40 • clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care
- 41 • effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals
- 42 • emotional support, empathy and respect
- 43 • attention to physical and environmental needs.
- 44

1

2 No evidence was identified that directly addressed:

3

4

- fast access to reliable health advice
- involvement of, and support for, family and carers
- continuity of care and smooth transitions.

7

8

For the purposes of the review, themes from the qualitative evidence are summarised only briefly here, with further details provided in Appendix 12.

10

Domains and sources of evidence without themes are not listed below.

11

11.2.1 Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences

12

Evidence from qualitative analyses

13

Barrier: control

14

Service users not only spoke about the importance of medication and forcible detention but also about the smaller freedoms they were or were not permitted in hospital:

16

17

18

It took me two or three years of being the good girl and obeying everything to my suddenly saying bollocks, I'm not doing this any more. I'll do what I want to do, and you're not going make me do anything I don't want to do. Which made life a lot easier. And there's these petty rules, like you must draw your curtains all the way back in the daytime. Why? Exactly? (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])

24

25

Evidence from surveys

26

The survey conducted by MIND (Rogers *et al.*, 1993) (see Chapter 4 for further information about the survey) showed that 52% of respondents received unwanted treatment (principally drugs, followed by ECT).

28

29

11.2.2 Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care

30

31

Evidence from qualitative analyses

32

Barrier: poor information

33

Many service users were unaware that they had been detained, or only told they were detained if they tried to walk off an inpatient ward:

35

36

37

38

Yeah. It was awful. Because I was like, who are they? How do they have the right to do this? They've got no right to do this. It must be the most awful thing. Like I hadn't heard much about that kind of thing happening before,

1 *but, so that's why it was very frightening. Because I was like, what the hell?*
2 (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])

3

4 Some people felt they hadn't been given enough information about the side-
5 effects of psychiatric medication or didn't have any control over which
6 psychiatric medication they were given:

7

8 *...the last time I was in hospital, they were trying me on different medications*
9 *then and you had very little choice then, because you know, you're under*
10 *section and you can't really refuse medication. So I was getting a lot of, quite a*
11 *few side effects from the medication I had in hospital. Like tremors were again*
12 *quite, tremors and also I was biting on my teeth a lot, to the point where I*
13 *cracked my own teeth, because I was biting that hard down. I couldn't control*
14 *when that happened. (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])*

15 *Evidence from surveys*

16 The mental health acute inpatient service users survey (see Chapter 4 for
17 further information about the survey) had one question relevant to the
18 domain of 'clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care' (see
19 Appendix 11 for full results). The results indicate that the majority (60%) of
20 service users feel they did not have their rights completely explained to them
21 in a way they could understand when they were detained under the Mental
22 Health Act (HMSO, 2007). The benchmark data indicate that there was some
23 variation in performance between trusts, and all trusts have a lot of room to
24 improve.

25

26 The survey conducted 20 years ago by MIND (Rogers *et al.*, 1993) (see Chapter
27 4 for further information about the survey) showed that most (63%) service
28 users considered that the reason for admission had not been adequately
29 explained to them. Furthermore, 68% were not satisfied with the explanation
30 they were given about their condition. When in hospital, 80% of service users
31 considered they had not received enough information about their treatment
32 generally, and 70% thought they had not received enough information on the
33 side-effects of treatment. Of those receiving antipsychotic drugs, 60% were
34 not informed of their purpose. Of this group, 70% were unhappy about the
35 amount of information they had received about their medication. With regard
36 to ECT, 14% were given information about the purpose of the treatment, and
37 9% recall being told of any potential side-effects.

38 **11.2.3 Emotional support, empathy and respect**

39 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

40 **Barrier: loss of respect and dignity**

41 The experience of being detained was for many people highly traumatic.
42 People were unsure on being admitted to hospital what their rights were and

1 what was happening. Having to have injections of antipsychotics was
2 specifically mentioned by some people as being an unpleasant experience:

3
4 *And I know in particular the injections, you tend to lose your dignity to, I*
5 *mean you do to an extent in a psychiatric ward anyway, although it's not*
6 *going to be as bad as prison. But yes, the injections, sometimes you know, you*
7 *do tend to feel that you're not in control at all.*

8
9 *And I was sort of wandering up to the ward with sort of blood dripping down*
10 *and this nurse came up and she was wonderful. And she just said, "Oh*
11 *[name], where have you been?" And I said, "Look what I've done." And she*
12 *said, "Oh silly person. Come to me." And then I got to the nursing station. I*
13 *didn't want to be touched. I refused to let them touch me, and the doctor was*
14 *really angry with me. I don't know why he was so angry. But he was. And he*
15 *took me away to be stitched up and he made a point of saying he wasn't giving*
16 *me an anaesthetic when he was going to stitch me up. Which may be you don't*
17 *need it if you're on high does Largactil. I was on a 1000mgs of Largactil by*
18 *then, which is a very high dose, so I didn't feel much anyway, but it felt quite*
19 *humiliating when he said it. (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline,*
20 *2011])*

21 **11.2.4 Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals**

22 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

23 **Barrier: medicine**

24 For some people antipsychotic medication made a dramatic impact on their
25 quality of life, for others it did not take away the symptoms and had serious
26 psychological and physical side effects:

27
28 *it's a very kind of difficult subject area. Because I can see how it helps so many*
29 *people, medication. But I also can see it, it might not be the thing for other*
30 *people, and it might be doing them more damage actually. That's what I said*
31 *to, when I first was in hospital, I said, "Why are you giving me medication,*
32 *you know, I need help with my diet. I need...taking medication doesn't stop me*
33 *being abused and getting distressed from the abuse. It's just putting the*
34 *distress on pause. It doesn't tackle anything really." (Experiences of*
35 *psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])*

36
37 Talking about being detained and having to take antipsychotic medication:

38
39 *Oh it was awful. It set me back. It was like, frightening. I thought they had no*
40 *right to do that. I, I think that it's a very brutal approach. I know why they do*
41 *it. Because they know that if you go on the medicine for a month, you'll be*
42 *better. And then after that you progressively get better, the more you take the*
43 *medicine.*

44

1 *And, it was a never ending cycle of in and out of hospital and they always*
2 *tried to blame me, they said that, you know, I was non-compliant but the*
3 *drugs didn't work and I didn't see how the drugs not working made me non-*
4 *compliant I think it made the drugs not work. (Experiences of psychosis*
5 *[Healthtalkonline, 2011])*

6

7 One man talked about his experiences of taking antipsychotic drugs in
8 hospital:

9

10 *I was very tired all the time, very drowsy, very zonked out, you know, very*
11 *medicated sedated. And also strangely enough, my throat constricted. The*
12 *muscles in my throat constricted so it made it very difficult to speak. [...]*

13

14 After changing his medication:

15

16 *Things did get better but that problem with my speech which, you know,*
17 *which I had no help from the psychiatrist [who] refused to believe it was a*
18 *recognisable [side effect]. (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline,*
19 *2011])*

20

Evidence from surveys

21

22 The survey conducted by MIND (Rogers *et al.*, 1993) (see Chapter 4 for further
23 information about the survey) showed that 80% of those who had taken
24 antipsychotic drugs reported suffering side-effects, the majority of these (62%)
25 being rated as 'severe'. Around 86% of this group also indicated that they
26 would have liked to have been offered an antipsychotic self-help group. Only
27 23% of those who had stopped their drugs reported having any help from
28 staff about the withdrawal.

29

11.2.5 Attention to physical and environmental needs

30

Evidence from qualitative analyses

31

Barrier: lack of attention to physical and environmental needs

32

33 Many people found the hospital environment frightening at worst and boring
34 at best. Physical health often suffered in this environment:

35

36 *And they tried me on different drugs every week, Risperidone, what else?*
37 *Haloperidol, Olanzapine. I went through the book, and I was putting on more*
38 *and more weight, because of hospital food and they wouldn't take me out to do*
39 *any exercise, because it was winter and they didn't want to go out. And*
40 *you're not allowed out on your own if you're under Section, particularly not if*
41 *you're blind. And then they put me on Clozapine, but they didn't warn me,*
42 *what could happen. And I went up to about seventeen stone. Not because I*
43 *was a piglet, just because I was on Clozapine and eating hospital food, and not*
44 *getting any exercise. (Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])*

45

1 A few people described the environment in hospitals as disorientating and
2 distressing:

3 *I think it's a well-established fact that you have less rights in hospital than the*
4 *prisoners do in prison. So you have, there's a loss of freedom. You know,*
5 *isolation or disorientation, all those things really and [er] it's quite hard to,*
6 *it's quite hard to live with. I think you have to be a very strong type to have*
7 *those many admissions and then come back, and you know, do the things I've*
8 *managed to do with my life really. (Experiences of psychosis*
9 *[Healthtalkonline, 2011])*

10 **11.2.6 Other themes**

11 *Evidence from qualitative analyses*

12 The shock that people felt when they discovered they could be detained and
13 treated against their will was something that people often spoke about in
14 great depth. After experiencing being detained, people often felt they wanted
15 to do anything they could to avoid it happening again:

16
17 *I woke up in the middle of the night, and I think, I thought to myself, no*
18 *they've made a mistake. So when I went to the office where the night nurse*
19 *were. She was there and like that sleeping and I saw her, and I said, "Excuse*
20 *me love. Excuse ... I think you've made a mistake. Have you got my clothes? I*
21 *need to go. I think you've made a wrong mistake." And I remember she*
22 *buzzed. She pressed a buzzer underneath the desk. I saw four big blokes run*
23 *down the corridor. They got hold of me and held me down on the floor, and*
24 *injected me with tranquillizer and it knocked me out for four days.*
25 *(Experiences of psychosis [Healthtalkonline, 2011])*

26 **11.2.7 Evidence summary**

27 Below is a summary of the evidence found for the key problems associated
28 with detention under the Mental Health Act, categorised according to the
29 dimensions of person-centred care.

30 *Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences*

31 The survey results show that many service users are not asked for consent
32 before treatment. The qualitative evidence suggested that compulsory
33 treatment and control impacted on the experience of care. In addition, service
34 users report being exposed to sometimes petty controls and staff can be
35 patronising.

36 *Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care*

37 No qualitative evidence was related to this domain, but the survey results
38 suggests that many service users are not having their rights completely
39 explained in a satisfactory way when detained under the Mental Health Act,
40 and are not receiving sufficient information about treatment. Service users
41 report not being given information about side effects, especially from

1 antipsychotics, which can be severe. This appears to have not changed from
2 20 years ago.

3 *Emotional support, empathy and respect*

4 The experience of control, restraint and compulsion is experienced as
5 traumatic with a loss of dignity and respect. Service users report sometimes
6 being blamed for treatment failures. Overall, the impression is that service
7 users subject to the Mental Health Act do not feel any significant empathy,
8 emotional support or respect from staff.

9 *Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals*

10 The survey results suggest that many service users experience troubling side-
11 effects from medication and do not get the support they want from staff or
12 self-help groups. In some cases, service users feel that staff do not believe
13 them when they report side effects, including descriptions of what are likely
14 to be dystonic reactions to antipsychotics.

15 *Environment*

16 Service users report that the environment on in patient units is experienced as
17 frightening when they are detained under the Mental Health Act, often
18 feeling disoriented. They are also reported to be often quite 'boring', with
19 little to do.

20 *Continuity of care and smooth transitions*

21 No data on this from the review.

22 **11.3 KEY REQUIREMENTS FOR THE PROVISION OF** 23 **HIGH QUALITY SERVICE USER EXPERIENCE**

24 The key requirements (qualitative statements based on the GDG's expert
25 opinion) for the provision of high quality service user experience for
26 assessment and referral in crisis under the Mental Health Act (HMSO, 2007)
27 are shown in Table 19. The key requirements for receiving compulsory
28 treatment under the Mental Health Act are shown in Table 20.

29

Table 19: Key requirements for the provision of high quality service user experience (assessment and referral in crisis under the Mental Health Act 2007).

Dimensions of person-centred care	Statement
Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users can expect a healthcare professional to attend to them, respecting remaining capacity and exploring other options where possible apart from hospital admission. Where previously discussed, these are respected. • Service users with impaired capacity should have their care records checked for advance decisions and advance statements before

	<p>treatment is started.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •
Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users are informed of their rights under the Mental Health Act (MHA, 1983; amended 1995 and 2007), including the right to appeal within 14 days. The service user can expect timely completion of paperwork and careful explanation of necessary processes. • Accessible and clear information must be provided to service users regarding their (legal) rights during their hospital admission.
Emotional support, empathy and respect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users can expect that special attention is given to engaging often disoriented service users in an empathic way whenever this is possible. There is a greater need to emotionally engage service users who are detained, and to treat them with dignity and respect whenever possible.
Fast access to reliable health advice	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users can expect to speak in a timely way to an expert informed professional who will recognise mental health problems and refer appropriately.
Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users can expect to meet someone fully trained and proficient, will give good advice and do what is best in the situation, answerable to the service user and their friends and relatives.
Attention to physical and environmental needs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users can trust staff to look after them and their possessions in a personal way.
Involvement of, and support for, family and carers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service users can expect someone in charge of his/her care to communicate with his/her next of kin and offer support.
Continuity of care and smooth transitions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Transfer to hospital should be done in a calm and orderly way, including relatives where this is possible and only involving the police if this cannot be done safely in any other way.

1
2

Table 20: Key requirements for the provision of high quality service user experience (receiving compulsory treatment under the Mental Health Act 2007).

Dimensions of person-centred care	Statement
Involvement in decisions and respect for preferences	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Control, restraint and rapid tranquilisation should be used as a last resort and reasons for it documented.
Clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No matter how distressed, service users should be given an explanation of why the compulsory treatment is being used.
Emotional support, empathy and respect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recognise that in the eyes of the service user, compulsory treatment may be seen as a violation of rights.
Fast access to reliable health advice	
Effective treatment delivered by trusted	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use minimum force.

professionals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Involve staff whom the service user trusts.
Attention to physical and environmental needs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure the service user is physically safe.
Involvement of, and support for, family and carers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Explain reasons for the episode of treatment to family members.
Continuity of care and smooth transitions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Discuss episodes of compulsory treatment at discharge in a calm and simple way.

1 11.4 EVIDENCE TO RECOMMENDATIONS

2 The review of qualitative evidence and surveys suggest that some people do
3 not have their rights properly explained to them, and some do not realise they
4 are, in fact, detained under the Mental Health Act (HMSO, 2007); consent to
5 treatment is largely ignored when a person is detained under the Mental
6 Health Act, and there are reports of service users finding healthcare
7 professionals patronising and petty in their approach. Moreover, information
8 is sorely lacking, both about their status and about side effects. There are
9 some reports of service users experiencing acute dystonic reactions which are
10 effectively trivialised and ignored by staff. It is important to note that the
11 experience of unexpected side effects and these being ignored appears in the
12 MIND survey (Rogers *et al.*, 1993) of 20 years ago, as well as in more recent
13 qualitative evidence, suggesting that this remains a problem today. Overall,
14 the experience of being detained is, at least for some, a traumatic one, with a
15 loss of dignity and respect and a feeling of not being cared for; with little
16 account taken of how disoriented the detained person is, and how
17 disorienting the environment of many wards continue to be. For some service
18 users, they are simply being detained.

19 The GDG concurred with these descriptions from the literature, and
20 furthermore highlighted the plight of families and carers who often do not
21 know much about what is going on and receive little information from
22 medical or nursing staff. Also, both the qualitative reviews and the GDG
23 raised concerns about safety of the individual and their property.

24
25 In identifying the key elements for excellent care, the GDG highlighted the
26 need to maintain, or to restore as quickly as possible following any form of
27 compulsory treatment, dignity and respect, accommodating preferences and
28 choice wherever possible, despite being subject to the Mental Health Act
29 (HMSO, 2007). Within the context of the Act, GDG members were of the view
30 that there should be a much greater emphasis on, and awareness of, the
31 Mental Capacity Act (MHSO, 2005) than is currently the case. Greater account
32 should be taken of the disorienting effects of crisis and illness and the need
33 for professionals to repeat explanations and uphold the persons rights,
34 backed up by very good written and verbal information. Service users and
35 their carers need access to experts, such as consultants, and greater care of
36 possessions. If control and restraint and compulsory treatment are used, then

1 this should be explained wherever possible and revisited, including before
2 discharge: the use of restraint is often traumatic and seen by the service user
3 as an infringement of their rights, paying due regard to ensuring the service
4 user is safe and feels safe; and when control or compulsion are used, the to
5 restore a sense of safety as soon as is practicable and possible.

6
7 When formulating the recommendations, taking into account both the key
8 evidence about current experience and their aspirations for excellence, the
9 GDG added a number of practical recommendations such as aiming to avoid
10 the use of the Mental Health Act (HMSO, 2007) through the use of effective,
11 non-custodial alternatives to admission, such as crisis houses, home treatment
12 and respite care. Also, when a person is admitted to a place of safety, the
13 guidance group considered that 4 hours should be the maximum time a
14 person should wait for a Mental Health Act assessment to take place; and
15 when someone has been detained, then transfer to an inpatient facility should
16 be done in a careful supportive and safe way, and without resorting to the use
17 of the police if possible. The GDG placed significant emphasis on rights and
18 the provision of good information and incorporating families and carers
19 where agreed by the service user.

20
21 On reviewing the aspirations and the key problems the guidance group
22 focused attention on some broad issues that apply across all points on the care
23 pathway, but were of particular importance to detention under the Mental
24 Health Act. Health and social care professionals should ensure that they can
25 understand and apply the principles of the Mental Capacity Act (2005). If the
26 service user has impaired capacity ensure that their care records are checked
27 for advanced decisions and advanced statements before treatment is offered.
28 All these issues were placed in care across all points on the care pathway in
29 the NICE guidance.

30 When using control, restraint and compulsory treatment, healthcare
31 professionals should understand what this is like for the service user, include
32 families in decisions where they can and explain what's happening regularly.
33 The evidence concerning injections forced or not, was discussed by the group
34 which endorsed the finding that these can be humiliating. When given as
35 rapid tranquillisation then it is difficult to see how 'empathy and respect' can
36 be sustained. It was clear from the evidence that some service users accept
37 medication they feel is harmful to them in order to avoid it being given by
38 force. In addition, the GDG reiterated the need to use the service user care
39 record, so the service user can record their views afterwards.

1 **11.5 RECOMMENDATIONS**

2 **11.5.1 Practice recommendations relating specifically to**
3 **assessment and treatment under the Mental Health Act**

4 **11.5.1.1** Carry out an assessment for possible detention under the Mental
5 Health Act (1983; amended 1995 and 2007) in a calm and considered
6 way, whenever possible, respond to the service user's needs and treat
7 them with dignity and respect.

8 **11.5.1.2** Explain to service users, no matter how distressed, why the
9 compulsory detention or treatment is being used. Repeat the
10 explanation if the service user appears not to have understood or is
11 pre-occupied or confused.

12 **11.5.1.3** When detaining a service user under the Mental Health Act (1983;
13 amended 1995 and 2007) inform the receiving mental health service
14 about the service user so they are expecting them and ready to
15 welcome them to the service.

16 **11.5.1.4** When detaining a service user under the Mental Health Act (1983;
17 amended 1995 and 2007):

- 18
- 19 • give them verbal and written information appropriate to the
 - 20 section of the Act used, including 'patient rights leaflets'
 - 21 detailing what is happening to them and why, and what
 - 22 their rights are
 - 23 • repeat this information if they appear not to have
 - 24 understood or are pre-occupied or confused
 - 25 • give them, and their families or carers if they agree,
 - 26 information about the legal framework of the Mental Health
 - 27 Act.

27 **11.5.1.5** Inform service users detained under the Mental Health Act (1983;
28 amended 1995 and 2007) of their right to appeal to a mental health
29 tribunal and support them if they appeal.

30 **11.5.1.6** Tell the service user that if they are dissatisfied with their care and
31 wish to make a complaint while under the Mental Health Act (1983;
32 amended 1995 and 2007) they can do so to the Care Quality
33 Commission.

34 **11.5.1.7** Detain service users under the Mental Health Act (1983; amended
35 1995 and 2007) only after all alternatives have been fully considered
36 in conjunction with the service user if possible, and with the family or
37 carer if the service user agrees. Alternatives may include:

- 38
- crisis houses

- 1 • home treatment
- 2 • acute day facilities
- 3 • respite care
- 4 • medicines review.

5 **11.5.1.8** When a service user is admitted to a 'place of safety' ensure they are
6 assessed for the Mental Health Act (1983; amended 1995 and 2007) as
7 soon as possible, and certainly within 4 hours. [QS6]

8 **11.5.1.9** After application of the Mental Health Act (1983; amended 1995 and
9 2007) ensure that:

- 10 • transition to the inpatient unit is smooth, efficient and
- 11 comfortable
- 12 • family and carers can travel with the service user if safe to
- 13 do so
- 14 • the police are involved only if the safety of the service user,
- 15 family, carers, dependent children or health and social care
- 16 professionals is an important consideration and cannot be
- 17 managed by other means, such as involving more
- 18 professionals.

19 *Control and restraint, and compulsory treatment*

20 **11.5.1.10** Control and restraint, and compulsory treatment including
21 rapid tranquillisation, should be used as a last resort and only by
22 healthcare professionals trained and competent to do this. Document
23 the reasons for such actions. [QS19]

24 **11.5.1.11** When a service user is subject to control and restraint, or
25 receives compulsory treatment including rapid tranquillisation under
26 the Mental Health Act (1983; amended 1995 and 2007):

- 27 • recognise that they may consider it a violation of their rights
- 28 • use minimum force
- 29 • try to involve healthcare professionals whom the service
- 30 user trusts
- 31 • make sure the service user is physically safe
- 32 • explain reasons for the episode of compulsory treatment to
- 33 the service user and involved family members or carers
- 34 • discuss episodes of compulsory treatment with the service
- 35 user at the time of discharge in a calm and simple manner.
- 36 [QS20]

37 **11.5.1.12** After any episode of control and restraint, or compulsory
38 treatment including rapid tranquillisation, explain the reasons for
39 such action to the service user and offer them the opportunity to
40 document their experience of it in their care record, and any
41 disagreement with healthcare professionals. [QS20]

42

1 **11.5.2 Practice recommendations relating to detention under the**
2 **Mental Health Act 2007 and all points on the pathway**

3 *Consent, capacity and treatment decisions*

4 **11.5.2.1** Health and social care professionals should ensure that they:

- 5 • understand and can apply the principles of the Mental
6 Capacity Act (2005) appropriately
- 7 • are aware that mental capacity needs to be assessed for each
8 decision separately
- 9 • can assess mental capacity using the test in the Mental
10 Capacity Act (2005)
- 11 • understand how the Mental Health Act (1983; amended 1995
12 and 2007) and the Mental Capacity Act (2005) relate to each
13 other in practice.
- 14 • .

15 **11.5.2.2** When a service user has impaired capacity, check their care record for
16 advance decisions and advance statements before offering or starting
17 treatment. [QS11]

18 **11.5.3 Research recommendations**

19 **11.5.3.1** For people using adult mental health services, how is compulsory
20 treatment and 'control and restraint' used in different settings and
21 what is the impact on the service user?

22

1 12. INTERVENTIONS TO IMPROVE 2 SERVICE USER EXPERIENCE

3 12.1 INTRODUCTION

4 This chapter provides the review protocol, information about the source of
5 evidence and findings from the review of interventions to improve service
6 user experience of care. The associated recommendations for best practice and
7 for research can be found at the end of the chapter.

8
9 Historically health services in Britain have tended to focus on efforts to
10 provide treatment that is effective and safe. This has also been true for mental
11 health services, where concerns about patient and public safety have
12 sometimes been the driving force for policy and service developments. In
13 other countries where healthcare services are delivered in a 'free-market',
14 greater emphasis has been placed on efforts to enhance service user
15 experience. In such countries providers of health care services have had to try
16 to ensure that 'consumers' of services are satisfied with the care they receive.

17
18 Over the last 30 years an increasing emphasis has been placed on service user
19 experience within the NHS. In 1991 a 'Patients' Charter' was published which
20 set out basic rights that users of the NHS should expect to receive
21 (Department of Health, 1991). These included a right to information about
22 treatment options and a right to be included in decisions about the care that
23 people should receive. Subsequent Government initiatives and policies have
24 continued to emphasise 'patient experience' in determining whether the NHS
25 is providing an effective service. In the document 'NHS Next Stage Review'
26 (Department of Health, 2008), patient experience was placed alongside patient
27 safety and access to effective treatments as one of the three central aims of the
28 NHS. In addition, the NHS Institute for Innovation and Improvement
29 developed a network to '...share ideas and practice to drive improvement in
30 patient experience'⁸.

31
32 Non-governmental groups have also looked at initiatives and strategies to
33 improve the experience of people who use healthcare services. For example,
34 the Picker Institute recently reviewed what works to engage people in
35 healthcare⁹, and a Salzberg Global Seminar, in collaboration with the
36 Foundation for Informed Medical Decision Making, looked at the 'role
37 patients can and should play in healthcare decisions'¹⁰. In mental health
38 specifically, evidence suggests that service users do wish to participate in

⁸ http://www.institute.nhs.uk/share_and_network/pen/welcome.html

⁹ <http://www.investinengagement.info/PatientExperiencetop>

¹⁰ <http://press.psprings.co.uk/bmj/march/SalzburgStatement.pdf>

1 decisions about their medical treatment, particularly if they have previously
2 experienced being treated involuntarily (Hamann *et al.*, 2005).

3 *Current practice*

4 Providers of mental health services use a broad range of methods to try to
5 gauge the experiences of service users. These include monitoring the content
6 of complaints, feedback from Patient Advice and Liaison Services and results
7 of inspections such as those by the Mental Health Commission. While
8 satisfaction and other surveys have long been conducted by Trusts, greater
9 emphasis has been placed on this methods of obtaining feedback from service
10 users as a result of national patient surveys (most recently those completed on
11 behalf of the Care Quality Commission¹¹).

12
13 Mental Health Trusts also obtain direct feedback from service users through
14 consultation with user groups and forums. Foundation Trusts are required to
15 have service user members on their Governing body and may appoint service
16 user representatives to Trust management and planning groups. While there
17 is a good deal of information about how mental health Trusts go about
18 obtaining the views of service users of their services, a lot less is known about
19 how they can improve service user experience (Crawford *et al.*, 2004). Trusts
20 will regularly make changes to service provision following feedback from
21 service users and are increasingly training staff in 'customer services'. Some
22 have argued that the best way to improve service user experience is to
23 provide people with choices about the service they use (Coulter, 2010). Others
24 have argued a focus on individual choice can be lead to confusion and
25 ultimately disempower users of public services (Barnes & Prior, 1995).

26 **12.1.1 Review protocol (interventions)**

27 The review protocol, including the review questions, information about the
28 search strategy, and the eligibility criteria used for this section of the
29 guidance, can be found in Table 21.

30

**Table 21: Review protocol for the review of interventions to improve
service user experience**

¹¹ <http://www.nhssurveys.org/>

Component	Description
Review question	2.1 For people who use adult NHS mental health services, do interventions that aim to improve the experience of care, when compared to standard care, produce meaningful improvements in the experience of care?
Sub-question	2.2 For people who use adult NHS mental health services, what service-level team configurations, when compared to standard care, improve the experience of care? 2.3 For team configurations shown to improve the experience of care, what are the common characteristics that appear to be associated with good service user experience?
Objectives	To determine whether interventions aiming to improve the experience of users of mental health services produce meaningful improvements in the experience of care.
Population	All people who use inpatient and community adult mental health services.
Intervention(s)	Interventions that aim to improve the experience of care, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Interventions aiming to change health provider behaviour (for example, interventions for healthcare professionals that aim to promote person-centred approaches in clinical consultations) • Interventions aiming to improve the relationship between the service user and healthcare professional (for example, shared decision making interventions) • Service-level team configurations that have been recommended for use in a NICE mental health guideline (General care: community mental health teams, crisis resolution and home treatment teams, the care programme approach, acute day hospital care; Specialist services: assertive outreach, early intervention services)
Comparison	Standard care or any other control
Critical outcomes	Any valid measure of service user experience of care (for example, Consumer Assessment of Healthcare Providers and Systems Hospital survey ¹), satisfaction, or evaluation of care.
Search strategy	Reviews cited by Goodrich & Cornwell (2008) or included in the Cochrane Consumers and Communication Group or the Cochrane Effective Practice and Organisation of Care Group list of reviews were assessed for eligibility and included where relevant. Additionally, the following websites were checked for eligible reviews: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Health Issues Centre • The Studer Group • Planetree • The Picker Institute • The Commonwealth Fund • The Schwartz Center • Implementation Science • Canadian Agency for Drugs and Technologies in Health
Date searched	The search for existing reviews was completed by March 2011.

	An update search for RCTs was conducted in April 2011.
Study design	Systematic reviews, RCTs and observational studies
Review strategy	A simplified matrix (see Chapter 3) was used to classify existing reviews of interventions. Reviews that included people with mental health problems are described first, followed by reviews of non-mental health disorders. The search strategy used by the most general review of service user focused interventions (Coulter & Ellins, 2006), was updated to identify recent RCTs of interventions to improve the experience of care.
	A narrative synthesis was used to summarise the evidence across reviews and RCTs.

Note. NHS = National Health Service.

¹ Darby C, Hays RD, Kletke P. Development and evaluation of the CAHPS hospital survey. *Health Serv Res* 2005;40: 1973-6.

12.1.2 Studies considered¹²

Seventeen reviews met eligibility criteria for the review of interventions. Of these, four included studies of people with mental health problems (see Table 22 and Table 23), and thirteen included studies of people with non-mental health problems (see Table 25, Table 27, Table 28, Table 29, Table 30). In addition, two RCTs were identified by the search for recent evidence (see Table 24). For further information about each included study, see Appendix 8. A number of other reviews were identified as potentially eligible, but on further inspection were excluded for a number of reasons (see Appendix 10 for further information).

¹² Here and elsewhere in the guideline, each study considered for review is referred to by a study ID (primary author and date of study publication, except where a study is in press or only submitted for publication, then a date is not used).

Table 22: Study information and results table for systematic reviews evaluating interventions to improve service user experience (mental healthcare specific or includes related studies)

Study ID	COULTER2006	DUNCAN2010
Pathway	Both acute (not MHA) and non-acute	Acute (not MHA) and non-acute
Domain	The relationship between individual service users & professionals/ The way that services and systems work	The relationship between individual service users & professionals/ The way that services and systems work
Method used to synthesise evidence	Narrative synthesis	Narrative synthesis
Design of included studies	Systematic reviews, RCTs, quasi-experimental studies, controlled observational studies, uncontrolled observational studies	Cluster RCT
Dates searched	1998 to 2006	Inception to Nov 2008
No. of included studies	35 (2 mental health; Bekker <i>et al.</i> , 1999; Warner <i>et al.</i> , 2000)	2 (Hamann <i>et al.</i> , 2006; Loh <i>et al.</i> , 2007)
Participant characteristics	Service users	Inpatients with schizophrenia/people with depression treated in primary care (N=518)
Intervention	'Patient-focused' interventions	Shared decision making aids (participants received decision aids, staff received training)
Comparison	Various	Control participants and staff did not receive the intervention
Outcome(s)	Service users' experience, including communication and psychological outcomes	Satisfaction
Risk of bias	The review was well conducted, but included studies had variable risk of bias	The review was well conducted, but included studies had significant risk of bias
<i>Note.</i> Acute (not MHA) = assessment and referral in crisis, hospital care, discharge/ transfer of care (not under Mental Health Act 2007); Non-acute = access, assessment, community care, discharge back to primary care.		

Table 23: Study information and results table for systematic reviews evaluating interventions to improve service user experience (mental healthcare specific or includes related studies)

Study ID	HAMANN2003	NICOLSON2009
Pathway	Acute (not MHA) and non-acute	Non-acute
Domain	The relationship between individual service users & professionals	The relationship between individual service users & professionals
Method used to synthesise evidence	Narrative synthesis	Narrative synthesis
Design of included studies	Observational study	RCT
Dates searched	Not reported	Dates varied according to database searched. Most databases were searched from Jan 1970 to Mar 2007
No. of included studies	4 (Bedi <i>et al.</i> , 2000; King <i>et al.</i> , 2000; Rokke <i>et al.</i> , 1999; Bunn <i>et al.</i> , 1997)	25 (2 mental health: Peveler <i>et al.</i> , 1999; Robinson <i>et al.</i> , 1986). Note: a further two studies received medication for mental health problems but the population were outside the scope of the guideline (one study included those with learning disabilities and the other excluded patients with psychiatric problems).
Participant characteristics	Depression; mixed anxiety and depression; schizophrenia	Patient characteristics of included studies: inpatients, outpatients and primary care patients who had received written information about a prescribed or over-the-counter medicine (N=4788). Patient characteristics of studies that focused on mental health problems: psychiatric inpatients and primary care patients with depression.
Intervention	Shared decision making interventions/ elements of shared decision making	Interventions where patients received written information about an individual medicine (for example, medicine pack insert, information contained on websites).
Comparison	None used	No information at all; spoken information only; manufacturer information only
Outcome(s)	Satisfaction	Satisfaction; satisfaction with information (note, the mental health

Risk of bias	The review had some limitations due to search strategy and inclusion of poor quality studies	studies did not report satisfaction or related outcomes) The review was well conducted, but included studies of variable risk of bias
<i>Note.</i> Acute (not MHA) = assessment and referral in crisis, hospital care, discharge/ transfer of care (not under Mental Health Act 2007); Non-acute = access, assessment, community care, discharge back to primary care.		

Table 24: Study information table for recent RCTs evaluating interventions to improve service user experience (mental healthcare specific)

	Structured 'patient-clinician' communication	Facilitated psychiatric advance directive session
Pathway	Non-acute	Acute (not MHA) and non-acute
Domain	The relationship between individual service users & professionals	The relationship between individual service users & professionals
<i>k</i> (total N)	1 (507 service users; 134 clinicians)	1 (469 service users)
Study ID	PRIEBE2007	SWANSON2006
Participants	Adults (18-65 years) with a diagnosis of schizophrenia or related disorder	Adults (18-65 years) with a diagnosis of schizophrenia or related disorder, bipolar disorder or depression with psychotic features
Length of intervention	Mean number of meetings = 5.21	Median = 21 days
Length of follow-up	12 months	1 month
Setting	Community psychiatric services (Spain)	Community and hospital psychiatric services (USA)
Study design	Cluster randomised controlled trial	Randomised controlled trial
Outcome	Satisfaction (Client Satisfaction Questionnaire, CSQ-8)	Perception of whether need for treatment was met (1-item on the Mental Health Statistics Improvement Program Consumer Survey index of treatment satisfaction)

Note. Acute (not MHA) = assessment and referral in crisis, hospital care, discharge/ transfer of care (not under Mental Health Act 2007); Non-acute = access, assessment, community care, discharge back to primary care.

Table 25: Study information and results table for systematic reviews evaluating interventions to improve service user experience (non-mental health studies)

Study ID	CHAUDHURY2005	DEVLIN2003
Pathway	Acute (not MHA)	Acute (not MHA)
Domain	The way that services and systems work	The way that services and systems work
Method used to synthesise evidence	Narrative synthesis	Narrative synthesis
Design of included studies	Search not restricted to particular design – covers all types of studies	Not stated
Dates searched	Not stated	Not stated
No. of included studies	Not stated (8 studies focus on patient satisfaction)	Not stated
Participant characteristics	Inpatients, health care professionals	Inpatients, health care professionals
Intervention	Single-occupancy rooms	'Patient-centred' interventions that focus on aspects of the physical environment.
Comparison	Multiple-occupancy rooms	Not stated
Outcome(s)	Satisfaction	Satisfaction
Risk of bias		Potential risk of bias due to the unsystematic nature that studies were searched and selected and due to the limited detail on the quality of the included studies.
<i>Note.</i> Acute (not MHA) = assessment and referral in crisis, hospital care, discharge/ transfer of care (not under Mental Health Act 2007).		

Table 26: Study information and results table for systematic reviews evaluating interventions to improve service user experience (non-mental health studies)

Study ID	KINNERSLEY2007	LEWIN2001
Pathway	Non-acute	Acute (not MHA) and non-acute
Domain	The relationship between individual service users & professionals	The relationship between individual service users & professionals
Method used to synthesise evidence	Narrative synthesis of all studies, and meta-analysis of five outcomes	Narrative synthesis
Design of included studies	RCT	Randomised controlled trials, controlled clinical trials, controlled before and after studies, and interrupted time series studies
Dates searched	Dates varied according to database searched. All databases were searched from 1986 or earlier to Sep 2006	Dates varied according to database searched. All databases were searched from 1987 or earlier to Dec 1999
No. of included studies	33	17
Participant characteristics	Patients and/or their representatives (or carers) before 'one-to-one' consultations with doctors or nurses in healthcare settings (N=8244)	Healthcare providers (both qualified and in training); some interventions were also directed at patients as well as healthcare providers.
Intervention	Interventions helping service users to address their information needs in a consultation (for example, question prompt sheets, coaching sessions)	Interventions directed at healthcare providers and intending to promote person-centred care within clinical consultations
Comparison	Dummy interventions; usual care	No training; minimal information
Outcome(s)	Experience or perception of care (for example, satisfaction)	Satisfacion
Risk of bias		
<i>Note.</i> Acute (not MHA) = assessment and referral in crisis, hospital care, discharge/ transfer of care (not under Mental Health Act 2007); Non-acute = access, assessment, community care, discharge back to primary care.		

Table 27: Study information and results table for systematic reviews evaluating interventions to improve service user experience (non-mental health studies)

Study ID	MURRAY2005	OCONNOR2009
Pathway	Non-acute	Non-acute
Domain	The relationship between individual service users & professionals	The relationship between individual service users & professionals
Method used to synthesise evidence	Meta-analysis	Meta-analysis – update to previous (2003) review
Design of included studies	RCT	RCT
Dates searched	1990 to 2003	Inception to Jul 2006
No. of included studies	24	55
Participant characteristics	Adults and children with chronic disease (community patients, primary care patients, outpatients, inpatients included) (N=3739)	Service users making decisions about screening or treatment options for themselves, for a child, or for an incapacitated significant other
Intervention	IHCAs (interactive health communication applications) – defined as any package requiring the user to interact directly with any form of computer, and containing health information plus at least one of peer support, decision support or behaviour change support	Decision aid interventions – any intervention designed to help people make specific and deliberative choices among options (including the status quo) by providing (at the minimum) information on the options and outcomes relevant to a person’s health status and implicit methods to clarify values
Comparison	Normal care; non-interactive forms of patient education (for example, written, audiotape, video, group or one-to-one didactic sessions led by peers or professionals); interactive educational sessions led either by peers or professionals	No intervention; usual care; alternative interventions; or a combination
Outcome(s)	Satisfaction	Satisfaction
Risk of bias		
<i>Note.</i> Non-acute = access, assessment, community care, discharge back to primary care.		

Table 28: Study information and results table for systematic reviews evaluating interventions to improve service user experience (non-mental health studies)

Study ID	PARRY2008	PITKETHLY2008
Pathway	Acute (not MHA) and non-acute	Non-acute
Domain	The relationship between individual service users & professionals	The relationship between individual service users & professionals
Method used to synthesise evidence	Narrative synthesis	Narrative synthesis
Design of included studies	Primary studies: case-control, within-subjects multiple baseline, cohort; and systematic reviews.	RCT, quasi-experimental
Dates searched	Inception to Jul 2006	Two updates conducted. Update #1: databases searched from various dates to Jan 2003 Update #2: databases searched from various dates to May 2007
No. of included studies	5 primary studies and 9 systematic reviews.	16
Participant characteristics	Qualified/trainee allied health professionals	Adults or children diagnosed with cancer and their close families (N=2318)
Intervention	Interventions enhancing communication or encompassing clinical skills more broadly, with communication a major component	Interventions offering or giving cancer patients video recordings, audio recordings or written summaries of their consultations with practitioners
Comparison	N/A	No recording or summary given/consultation as usual; standardised information given not related to consultation
Outcome(s)	Satisfaction	Experience of health care (satisfaction; participation in subsequent consultations; complaints and litigation, etc)
Risk of bias	<i>Note.</i> Acute (not MHA) = assessment and referral in crisis, hospital care, discharge/ transfer of care (not under Mental Health Act 2007); Non-acute = access, assessment, community care, discharge back to primary care.	

Table 29: Study information and results table for systematic reviews evaluating interventions to improve service user experience (non-mental health studies)

Study ID	REEVES2008	SAULTZ2004
Pathway	Acute (not MHA)	Acute (not MHA) and non-acute
Domain	The relationship between individual service users & professionals	The relationship between individual service users & professionals
Method used to synthesise evidence	Narrative synthesis	Narrative synthesis
Design of included studies	RCT, controlled before and after (CBA)	RCTs, cohort studies, correlation studies and reviews
Dates searched	1999 to 2006	1966 to 2002
No. of included studies	6	30 (22 original research reports from 20 studies +8 reviews)
Participant characteristics	Health and social care professionals (for example, chiropodists/podiatrists, complementary therapists, dentists, dieticians, doctors/physicians, hygienists, psychologists, psychotherapists, midwives, nurses, pharmacists, physiotherapists, occupational therapists, radiographers, speech therapists, and social workers), patients	Healthcare professionals (for example, doctors, midwives, pharmacists), patients and carers.
Intervention	Interprofessional education interventions	Interpersonal continuity of care
Comparison	Control groups which received no education intervention.	Control groups with no focus on continuity of care
Outcome(s)	Satisfaction	Satisfaction
Risk of bias		Moderate: 14 out of 20 studies had quality score of 5/10 or more but confounding factors limit the conclusions that can be drawn.
<i>Note.</i> Acute (not MHA) = assessment and referral in crisis, hospital care, discharge/ transfer of care (not under Mental Health Act 2007); Non-acute = access, assessment, community care, discharge back to primary care.		

Table 30: Study information and results table for systematic reviews evaluating interventions to improve service user experience (non-mental health studies)

Study ID	SHEPPERD2010	WETZELS2007
Pathway	Acute (not MHA)	Non-acute
Domain	The way that services and systems work	The relationship between individual service users & professionals
Method used to synthesise evidence	Meta-analysis	Narrative synthesis
Design of included studies	RCT	RCT, quasi-randomised
Dates searched	Inception to 2009 (Cochrane databases, MEDLINE, EMBASE); inception to 1996 for other databases.	Inception to Jun 2004
No. of included studies	21	3
Participant characteristics	Hospital inpatients (N=7234)	Older patients (all patients to be ≥ 65 years), patients' caregivers/family members, GPs (N=433)
Intervention	Discharge plans tailored to the individual patient	Patient-focused interventions with the intention of increasing patients' involvement in the primary medical care consultation (administered either before, during, or after the patient/healthcare provider consultation)
Comparison	Routine discharge care not individualised	Untrained/usual care
Outcome(s)	Satisfaction	Satisfaction; patients' evaluations of care and procedures used for complaints and comments
Risk of bias	The systematic review was carried out well; individual studies had low risk of bias.	The systematic review was carried out well. Included studies were few and generally small, with short-term follow-up, and moderate risk of bias.
<i>Note.</i> Acute (not MHA) = assessment and referral in crisis, hospital care, discharge/ transfer of care (not under Mental Health Act 2007); Non-acute = access, assessment, community care, discharge back to primary care.		

Table 31: Study information and results table for systematic reviews evaluating interventions to improve service user experience (non-mental health studies)

Study ID	ZWARENSTEIN2009
Pathway	Acute (not MHA)
Domain	The relationship between individual service users & professionals
Method used to synthesise evidence	Narrative synthesis
Design of included studies	RCT
Dates searched	Inception to 2007
No. of included studies	5
Participant characteristics	Health and social care professionals, service users
Intervention	Tools or routines designed to improve practice-based interprofessional collaboration (IPC)
Comparison	No intervention/alternative intervention
Outcome(s)	Satisfaction
Risk of bias	The systematic review was well-conducted. Of the five included RCTs, one was rated as high quality by the review authors and four as moderate quality.
<i>Note.</i> Acute (not MHA) = assessment and referral in crisis, hospital care, discharge/ transfer of care (not under Mental Health Act 2007).	

1 **12.2 EVIDENCE REVIEWED – MENTAL HEALTH**

2 **12.2.1 Existing reviews**

3 ***COULTER2006***

4 Coulter and Ellins (2006) produced, what they describe as, a policy overview of
5 'patient-focused' interventions. They defined these interventions as "those that
6 recognise the role of patients as active participants in the process of securing
7 appropriate, effective, safe and responsive healthcare". The review was structured
8 using seven quality improvement goals: 1) improving health literacy; 2) improving
9 clinical decision-making; 3) improving self-care; 4) improving service user safety; 5)
10 improving access to health advice; 6) improving the care experience; 7) improving
11 service development. The evidence was sourced from searches of the major
12 electronic databases and websites, including Medline, Embase, CINAHL, DH-
13 DATA, PsychINFO, AMED, British Nursing Index, Cochrane Library, DARE, King's
14 Fund, National Electronic Library for Health, NHS Research Register, WHO, AHRQ.
15 Specialist websites were also scanned. The search was limited to English language
16 papers published between 1998-2006.

17
18 Of the 35 included studies (reviews and primary studies), two included people with
19 mental health disorders and were relevant to the current guidance. Of these, one was
20 included in the section on improving clinical decision-making (Bekker *et al.*, 1999).
21 This paper was a systematic review of 541 studies that evaluated interventions that
22 may affect "informed patient decision-making". Of the included studies, 15 were
23 classified by the authors as being in mental health, but further research was needed
24 to reach a conclusion about the effect of informed decision-making interventions.
25 The other mental health study included by Coulter and Ellins (2006), in the section
26 on improving self-care, was a RCT evaluating 'patient-held' shared care records in
27 90 people with long-term mental illness (Warner *et al.*, 2000). After 12 months,
28 patient-held records did not lead to improved satisfaction with services when
29 compared to the control group.

30 ***DUNCAN2010***

31 Duncan and colleagues (2010) conducted a systematic review of interventions aimed
32 to increase 'shared decision making' to improve service user satisfaction with their
33 experience of care. Shared decision making was defined as the sharing of treatment
34 preferences and decisions by both the professional and the service user. To be
35 included into the review, decision making had to involve at least two participants
36 and had to focus on enhancing any of the following four criteria: 1) the involvement
37 of two or more people in the decision making process; 2) the sharing of information
38 between participants; 3) both parties must have participated in the decision making
39 process; and 4) a decision must have been made or been actively deferred. The study
40 focused on individuals diagnosed with a mental health condition as classified by, for
41 example, the International Classification of Diseases (WHO, 1992) or the Diagnostic
42 and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (APA, 2000). The following sources were

1 searched: the Cochrane Library 2008; MEDLINE; EMBASE; PsycINFO; British
2 Nursing Index and Archive; and SIGLE. The review also handsearch online trial
3 registers and the reference list of included studies. Authors were also contacted to
4 identify further studies to include into the review. The search was last conducted in
5 2008.

6
7 Two cluster RCTs (N=518) were identified that met the review's inclusion criteria
8 (Hamann *et al.*, 2006; Loh *et al.*, 2007); both studies were conducted in Germany. The
9 review found inconsistent evidence regarding the effectiveness of shared decision
10 making on service users' satisfaction with care. In one study, Loh *et al.* (2007) found
11 that primary care service users newly diagnosed with depression were significantly
12 more satisfied with their care compared with treatment as usual (p= 0.014). While
13 Hamann *et al.* (2006) found that that inpatients with a diagnosis of schizophrenia or
14 schizoaffective disorder who received shared decision making were not significantly
15 more satisfied with care, compared with treatment as usual (p=0.42). However this
16 study found that the provider delivering the intervention was statistically
17 significantly more satisfied with care compared with treatment as usual (p=0.02).

18 **HAMANN2003**

19 A further systematic review (Hamann *et al.*, 2003) also explored the impact of shared
20 decision making on service users' satisfaction with care. The review's inclusion
21 criteria were not clearly reported but the results suggest that it included studies
22 where participants were allowed to choose between treatment options rather than
23 being randomised to treatment or control groups and therefore included an element
24 of 'shared decision making'; and also included studies where a formal model of
25 shared decision making was evaluated. The review searched Medline for relevant
26 studies; the dates of the search were not provided.

27
28 No good quality studies were identified that directly examined shared decision
29 making interventions compared to an adequate control. Three studies (Bedi *et al.*,
30 2000; King *et al.*, 2000; Rokke *et al.*, 1999) were identified where participants with
31 depression choose between different treatment options rather than being
32 randomised to different groups. The authors of the review reported that there were
33 no statistically significant differences between treatment groups in service users'
34 satisfaction with care. However, the conclusions which can be drawn from these
35 studies are limited because participants in both groups choose what treatment they
36 received. The review also included one study the explored the effectiveness of a
37 formal model of shared decision making to patients with schizophrenia to decide
38 between the continuation or discontinuation of an antipsychotic depot medication.
39 However, this study did not explore service users' satisfaction with care when a
40 shared decision making intervention was utilised.

41 **NICOLSON2009**

42 In a systematic review, Nicolson *et al.* (2009) explored the effectiveness of providing
43 written information about individual medicines on service user-related outcomes.
44 The interventions included information contained in a medicine pack insert or a

1 supplementary leaflet, or non-print written information such as the information
2 contained on websites, that are intended for the use of service users. The sources
3 searched were MEDLINE, EMBASE, CINAHL, The Cochrane Library, PsycINFO
4 and other databases up to March 2007. The review also hand searched five journals
5 and the reference lists of the included studies. Experts in the field were also
6 contacted for relevant studies.

7
8 The review included 25 RCTs, two of which included participants with mental
9 health problems (Robinson *et al.*, 1986; Peveler *et al.*, 1999) which compared receiving
10 written information with not receiving written information. The studies that focused
11 on mental health problems did not report data on service user experience of care
12 and/or satisfaction with care. However, there were three non-mental health studies
13 that explored service users' satisfaction with care of which two found that receiving
14 information resulted in greater satisfaction with the information provided compared
15 with not receiving information. However, this difference was only statistically
16 compared in one trial (which found a statistically significant difference, Gibbs *et al.*,
17 1989), and was not tested in a second trial (McBean & Blackburn, 1982). The third
18 study found that service users were more satisfied when they received numerical
19 risk information about side effects compared with verbal information; this difference
20 was statistically significant for one of two side effects ($p < 0.05$; Knapp *et al.*, 2004).

21 **12.2.2 Recent studies**

22 ***PRIEBE2007***

23 Priebe *et al.* (2007) used a cluster randomised controlled trial to investigate the effect
24 of an intervention supporting 'patient-clinician' communication on care outcomes
25 for 507 people with schizophrenia or related disorders. Key workers (N = 134) were
26 allocated to either the intervention, consisting of a computer-mediated procedure to
27 structure 'patient-clinician' dialogue, or treatment as usual. At twelve-month follow-
28 up, service users who received the intervention had significantly higher treatment
29 satisfaction ($p = .01$) compared with participants in the control group.

30 ***SWANSON2006***

31 Swanson and colleagues (2006) explored the impact that psychiatric advance
32 directives have on the working alliance between service users and clinicians and on
33 service users' receipt of needed mental health services. People with severe mental
34 illness (N = 469) were randomly assigned to a facilitated intervention involving a
35 guided discussion of choices involved in anticipatory mental health treatment
36 planning or a control group that received written information about psychiatric
37 advance directives and referral to resources in the public mental health system. At
38 one-month follow-up, participants in the facilitated session had a greater working
39 alliance with their clinicians and were more likely than those in the control group to
40 report receiving the mental health services they believed they needed (Odds
41 Ratio=1.57, $p < 0.05$).

1 **12.2.3 Evidence summary for mental healthcare**

2 There is a paucity of evidence about interventions aiming to improve the experience
3 of people using mental health services. What limited evidence there is, concerns
4 interventions to improve the decision-making process or communication between
5 healthcare professionals and service users.
6

7 For shared decision making interventions, the evidence is inconclusive with three
8 studies demonstrating positive influences and two failing to show an influence on
9 satisfaction with treatment. Observational studies that have looked inside the black
10 box of shared decision-making offer insights into why this may be the case. In a
11 conversation analysis study of how decisions are made about long-term
12 antipsychotic prescribing, based on tape recordings of 92 outpatient consultations,
13 Quirk and colleagues (2008; 2009; in press) found that some shared decisions are
14 considerably more 'pressured' than others and are unlikely to have been experienced
15 by the service user as having been shared - even though they had been fully
16 involved and agreed with the outcome. The research identified some of the more
17 subtle forms of control used by psychiatrists to pressure or steer patients into
18 'choosing' what the psychiatrist regards as the best treatment option. Consultations
19 may depart from a shared decision making model in other respects as well with
20 psychiatrists responding poorly to service users' complaints about sedation and
21 mental clouding (Seale *et al.*, 2007). Hence the inconclusiveness of the literature on
22 the impact of shared decision making on outcome, especially treatment satisfaction,
23 may be partly explained by the complexity of the decision making process. A
24 decision that is defined as shared by a clinician or research team in practice may not
25 be experienced as such by the service user, in which case the benefits of shared
26 decision making (e.g., 'patient global satisfaction' in DUNCAN2010) will be lost.

27 **12.3 EVIDENCE REVIEWED - NON-MENTAL HEALTH**

28 **12.3.1 Existing reviews**

29 **CHAUDHURY2005**

30 Chaudhury *et al.* (2005) in a systematic review explored the impact of single-
31 occupancy rooms for service users compared with multiple-occupancy rooms in
32 hospitals on outcomes including service users' satisfaction with care. The review
33 searched electronic databases such as Medline, EBSCO, Web of Science, PsycINFO,
34 Science Direct, EMBASE, Pubmed and Social Sciences Citation Index (other
35 databases were also searched). In addition, relevant journals, magazines and the
36 reference lists of included studies were searched. The dates that the searches were
37 conducted were not reported.
38

39 The total number of studies included in this review was not reported. There were
40 however, eight studies with data relating to service user satisfaction; only these
41 studies are reported below. The authors of the review noted that studies on service
42 user satisfaction demonstrated that single occupancy rooms were positively

1 associated with patients' satisfaction with their hospital stay (Cleary *et al.* 1988;
2 Gotlieb, 2000, 2002; Harris, *et al.*, 2002; Kaldenberg, 1999; Lawson and Phiri, 2000;
3 Morgan and Stewart, 1999; Nguyen *et al.*, 2002). The review did not report the risk of
4 bias, or the study design, of the included studies (including other study
5 characteristics information) limiting the conclusions which can be drawn from this
6 review.

7 **DEVLIN2003**

8 Devlin & Arneil (2003) in a non-systematic review explored the literature on person-
9 centred care. The review was concerned with the impact of person-centered care in
10 increasing service users' control over their healthcare environment and the impact
11 this has on service user outcomes. The review did not provide details on how the
12 studies were searched and selected; there was also no information on the review's
13 primary outcomes.

14
15 The total number of included studies was not reported. Only those studies that
16 reported outcomes relating to service user satisfaction are described below. The
17 authors of the review report that there is preliminary results from one study (Martin
18 *et al.*, 1990) that suggest that Planetree units, which are person-centered care
19 programmes that emphasise a homelike environment, result in greater satisfaction in
20 care among service users compared with traditional medical-surgical units. The data
21 and study design used to support this conclusion was not provided. In randomised
22 trial, Martin and colleagues (1998) demonstrated that service users who were
23 assigned to a Planetree unit were more satisfied with their stay than were those who
24 were assigned to other units. This satisfaction included greater satisfaction with the
25 extent to which nurses were involved in their care and with the opportunity to see
26 their support network (family and friends). However, there were no statistically
27 significant differences in clinical outcomes such as greater involvement of physicians
28 in their care. Lastly, a study that evaluated the presence or absence of a window and
29 the affect on service users' experiences in hospital suggest that satisfaction is
30 generally achieved when window area occupies 20-30% of the window wall (Keep,
31 1977); details of the study design were not reported by the review authors. The
32 conclusions that can be drawn from this review are limited as there is a potential risk
33 of bias due to the unsystematic nature that studies were searched and selected and
34 due to the limited detail on the quality of the included studies.

35 **KINNERSLEY2007**

36 A systematic review (Kinnersley *et al.*, 2007) explored the effectiveness of
37 interventions directed at service users which were delivered before healthcare
38 consultations, to help them gather information during their consultation. These
39 included for example, written materials such as prompt sheets with questions and
40 coaching sessions delivered in the waiting room before service users' consultations.
41 It did not include decision aids, which are reported on earlier in this chapter. The
42 review searched for studies in CENTRAL, MEDLINE, EMBASE, PsycINFO, and
43 other databases, with no language restriction. The reference lists of included articles

1 and related reviews, and selected journals were also hand-searched. The search was
2 last conducted in 2006.

3
4 The review identified 33 RCTs of which 23 studies reported outcomes relating to
5 service user satisfaction. The review found a small but statistically significant effect
6 on service user satisfaction (SMD 0.09, 95%CI 0.03 to 0.16) when an intervention was
7 delivered before consultation to help service users address their information needs
8 compared with a control condition (attention-control or standard care). In a sub-
9 group analysis by the type of intervention delivered, interventions delivered via
10 coaching produced a small and statistically significant effect (SMD 0.23, 95% CI 0.08
11 to 0.38). Further sub-group analyses found effects that were unlikely to be
12 meaningful.

13 **LEWIN2001**

14 Lewin *et al.* (2001) in a systematic review investigated the effects of interventions for
15 healthcare providers (including those in training to qualify as healthcare providers)
16 that aimed to promote person-centred approaches in clinical consultations. For the
17 intervention to be considered as person-centred it had to encourage shared control
18 over the consultation where decisions about interventions had to be made with the
19 service user and/or the focus of the consultation had to take into account that
20 service users have individual preferences situated within social contexts. The review
21 searched MEDLINE, HEALTH STAR, PsycLIT, CINAHL, EMBASE and the
22 reference list of studies were assessed for inclusion. The search was last updated in
23 1999.

24
25 Seventeen studies were included in the review (15 RCTs and two controlled trials),
26 10 of which measured service user satisfaction. The review found inconsistent
27 evidence from seven studies that compared the effectiveness of person-centred
28 training with no intervention on service users' satisfaction. Two of the seven studies
29 demonstrated that in at least two measures on service user satisfaction, there was a
30 statistically significant difference in the group where healthcare providers received
31 person-centred training compared with no intervention (Cope *et al.*, 1986; Smith *et al.*
32 1995). However, the remaining five studies demonstrated that there was no
33 statistically significant difference between the treatment and control group on serve
34 users' satisfaction with the consultation process (Langewitz *et al.* 1998; Putnam *et al.*
35 1988; Roter *et al.*, 1998; Smith *et al.*, 1998; Thom *et al.*, 1999).

36
37 There was also similar inconsistent evidence on service user satisfaction in a further
38 three studies that compared person-centred training for providers plus person-
39 centred materials for service users compared with no intervention. One study found
40 a statistically significant difference in service user satisfaction among children who
41 received the intervention compared with the control group, but did not find a
42 statistically significant difference in parents' satisfaction (Lewis *et al.*, 1991). Another
43 study found a statistically significant improvement before and after the consultation
44 period in the control group but not in the treatment group (Pill *et al.*, 1998). While the

1 teaming study found no statistically significant difference between groups (Joos *et*
2 *al.*, 1996).

3 **MURRAY2005**

4 Murray *et al.* (2005) in a systematic review assessed the effectiveness of Interactive
5 Health Communication Applications (IHCAs) which were defined as computer-
6 based (usually web-based) information packages for service users that combined
7 online peer support, decision support, or help with behaviour change to adults or
8 children with chronic illness. The review searched electronic databases including
9 The Cochrane Library, MEDLINE, EMBASE, PsycINFO and CINAHL, from 1990 to
10 2003. The grey literature and the reference list of included studies were also
11 searched.

12
13 Twenty-four studies were included in the review but satisfaction with care and/or
14 service users' experience of care were not summarised in the review. However, the
15 review did find that IHCAs had a statistically significant positive effect on
16 knowledge (SMD = 0.46, 95% CI 0.22 to 0.69) and social support (SMD = 0.35, 95% CI
17 0.18 to 0.52) compared with a control group. There was also a positive effect on self-
18 efficacy in favour of IHCA compared with a control group (SMD = 0.24, 95% CI 0.00
19 to 0.48).

20 **OCONNOR2009**

21 A systematic review of RCTs evaluated the efficacy of decision aids for people facing
22 difficult treatment or screening decisions (O'Connor *et al.*, 2009). Decision aids were
23 defined as interventions designed to help people make specific and deliberative
24 choices among options by providing, at the minimum, information on the options
25 and outcomes relevant to a person's health status and that uses implicit methods to
26 clarify values. The review searched MEDLINE, CENTRAL, CINAHL, EMBASE and
27 PsycINFO; expert researchers were also contacted. There were no language
28 restrictions; the search was last updated in 2006.

29
30 Fifty-five studies were included in the review, 11 of which measured the
31 effectiveness of decision aids compared with a control group on service user
32 satisfaction with: the decision made; the process of decision making; the
33 opportunities to participate in decision making; and/or satisfaction with outcomes.
34 The review found inconsistent evidence regarding the effectiveness of decision aids
35 compared with a control group (no intervention, standard care, alternative
36 interventions, or a combination) on service users' satisfaction with care. Six out of 11
37 studies found statistically significant improvements in satisfaction in the treatment
38 group compared with the control group, however, the remaining five studies found
39 no statistically significant differences between groups.

40 **PARRY2008**

41 Parry *et al.* (2008) conducted a systematic review on the effectiveness of training to
42 improve communication performance amongst healthcare professionals.
43 Interventions included training that had a substantial or sole focus on

1 communication skills and were delivered to healthcare workers, who at least some
2 of whom were allied health professionals. The review searched for primary studies
3 in CINAHL, EMBASE, Medline, PsycINFO and ERIC (other electronic databases);
4 hand searched the reference list of included studies; and contacted key researchers.
5 The review also conducted a search for systematic reviews published in the
6 Cochrane Library databases from 1997 to 2006. The results for the primary studies
7 and systematic reviews are reported separately.
8

9 Five primary studies and nine systematic reviews were included in the review. The
10 authors suggest that there have been no large-scale, blinded, and adequately
11 powered controlled studies evaluating effects of communication skills interventions
12 for healthcare professionals. In addition, that the evidence was limited and of
13 variable quality. However, the authors suggest that there was some preliminary
14 evidence from two small-scale, within-subjects controlled design studies (Ducharme
15 & Spencer, 2001; Mozzoni & Bailey, 1996) that found that targeted training for
16 professionals may improve clinicians' performance and service user outcomes.
17 However, their impact on service user experience of care was not detailed. While the
18 evidence from the systematic reviews indicates that there was some evidence of
19 effectiveness for interventions aimed at improving clinical communication
20 performance including aspects of trainees' attitudes, trainees' behaviours, and some
21 service user-related measures, in particular service users' satisfaction. The
22 conclusions that can be drawn from this review are limited because no quantitative
23 data were provided to support the conclusions of the review.

24 **PITKETHLY2008**

25 Pitkethly *et al.* (2008) systematically reviewed the efficacy of providing recordings or
26 summaries of service users' consultations to people with cancer and their families.
27 These interventions could include offering or giving people with cancer video
28 recordings, audio recordings or written summaries. The review updated a previous
29 review (Scott *et al.* 2003) by searching the Cochrane Library, MEDLINE, CINAHL,
30 Dissertation Abstracts, EMBASE, PsycINFO, AMED, British Nursing Index, SCI-
31 EXPANDED, SSCI and Sociological Abstracts. The search was last conducted in
32 2007.
33

34 The review included 15 RCTs and one quasi-randomised controlled trial. The
35 authors of the review noted that the data on satisfaction was heterogeneous as many
36 studies measured service users' satisfaction in different domains including
37 satisfaction with information received, with the consultation, with interpersonal
38 aspects of medical care, with medical care in general and/or with service user-
39 physician communication. The review did find that in three out of ten studies that
40 measured satisfaction, service users with a recording or summary of the consultation
41 were statistically more satisfied than the control group (Damian & Tattersall, 1991,
42 $p=0.014$; Dunn *et al.* 1993, $p< 0.05$; Ong *et al.* 2000, $p< 0.05$). In a further study
43 (Sepucha *et al.* 2000), there was higher satisfaction with a written summary
44 compared to control but this was not statistically significant ($p=0.073$). In a
45 comparison of audio-taped summaries compared with written information, two

1 studies reported that a tape was a more effective reminder than written information
2 (Tattersall, 1994, $p < 0.05$; Bruera, 1999, $p = 0.04$). The remaining comparison groups
3 found no statistically significant differences between groups including consultation
4 tapes compared with standardised tape (Hack *et al.*, 2007) and information plus
5 consultation tape compared information alone and compared with a control group
6 (Reynolds *et al.*, 1981). Limited conclusions could be drawn from the remaining
7 studies.

8 **REEVES2008**

9 In a systematic review, Reeves *et al.* (2008) evaluated the effectiveness of
10 interprofessional education which was defined as an intervention when members of
11 more than one health and/or social care profession learnt interactively together with
12 the explicit purpose of improving interprofessional collaboration and/or improving
13 outcomes for service users. The review searched Cochrane Effective Practice and
14 Organisation of Care Group specialised register, MEDLINE and CINAHL, for the
15 years 1999 to 2006. Selective journals were also searched as were the reference lists of
16 the included studies.

17
18 Six studies were included in the review, four RCTs and two controlled before and
19 after studies. Two of the six studies measured service user satisfaction and found
20 inconsistent evidence regarding the effectiveness of interpersonal education
21 compared with receiving no educational intervention. One study demonstrated that
22 interpersonal education had a statistically significant positive effect on service user
23 satisfaction compared with control ($p < 0.001$; Campbell, 2001). While the second
24 demonstrated that an interprofessional education programme did not result in
25 statistically significant differences between groups, however, mean scores were
26 higher in the control group (mean score = 0.072, 95% CI, -0.010 to 0.154) compared
27 with the treatment group (mean score = 0.030 95% CI, -0.060 to 0.120).

28 **SAULTZ2004**

29 Saultz and Albedaiwi (2004) searched MEDLINE and citation lists in included
30 studies to identify reviews and primary research reports that evaluated the effects of
31 interpersonal continuity of care on service user satisfaction. The search was run in
32 2002. Included studies were reviews, RCTs, cohort studies and correlation studies.

33
34 A total of 30 reports were included, of which 22 reported results from 20 primary
35 research studies and 8 were reviews. Four RCTs found significantly higher
36 satisfaction scores with clinics offering continuity of care compared with no
37 continuity in parents of low-income children in the US (Alpert *et al.*, 1976; Becker *et al.*,
38 1974), in men aged 55 and over attending Veterans Administration (VA) clinics
39 (Wasson *et al.*, 1984) and in pregnant women in Australia (Rowley *et al.*, 1995), with
40 follow-up times of up to 18 months. However, no quantitative data from the studies
41 were reported in the review to support the reviewer's conclusions. Four cohort
42 studies also found an association between continuity of care and increased service
43 user satisfaction, and 10 out of 12 correlation studies reported a positive association
44 between continuity of care or a stronger professional-service user relationship and

1 service user satisfaction. The review is limited by not reporting study data and by
2 heterogeneity of primary studies, meaning that continuity of care was measured in
3 different ways and was often one component of a larger programme, so the precise
4 effects of continuity of care itself are unclear.

5 **SHEPPERD2010**

6 Shepperd and colleagues (2010) conducted a systematic review of RCTs on the
7 effects of discharge planning for inpatients on acute healthcare use, service user and
8 caregiver satisfaction, service user health outcomes, and costs of care. A search was
9 run in the Cochrane EPOC Group Register (including CENTRAL and HealthSTAR),
10 MEDLINE and EMBASE to 2009, and CINAHL, EconLit, SIGLE and PsycLit to 1996,
11 and the authors also searched citation lists from identified studies and individual
12 trialists were contacted for additional data and unpublished studies.

13
14 Twenty-one studies met the inclusion criteria, three of which (Moher *et al.*, 1992;
15 Laramee *et al.*, 2003; Weinberger *et al.*, 1996) reported increased service user
16 satisfaction with discharge planning compared with control. Laramee and colleagues
17 (2003) reported significantly higher service user satisfaction scores with hospital
18 care, hospital discharge and recovery at home, and Weinberger and colleagues
19 (1996) reported greater satisfaction with continuity of care and non-financial access
20 to medical care. Bolas and colleagues (2004) reported improved information
21 exchange between healthcare professionals with use of a pharmacy discharge letter,
22 although Nazareth *et al.* (2001) found no difference in satisfaction with this
23 intervention.

25 **WETZELS2007**

26 Wetzels and colleagues (2007) carried out a systematic review of interventions
27 designed to improve older service users' involvement in primary care episodes.
28 Studies were included if they involved service users aged 65 and over taking an
29 active role in deciding about and planning their own medical care; were set in
30 primary care in relation to single consultations with a doctor or to healthcare use;
31 and focused on 1) informing service users about appropriate use of healthcare and
32 how to choose a healthcare provider ; 2) supplying service user data and preparation
33 for contact with a care provider; 3) providing tailored service user information and
34 improving communication during the contact with the healthcare provider or 4)
35 evaluating care and collecting service users' complaints and comments about care.
36 Studies were included if they were RCTs or quasi-randomised studies, identified
37 from a search of the Cochrane Consumers and Communication Review Group
38 Specialised Register, the Cochrane Central Register of Controlled Trials, EMBASE,
39 PsycINFO, DARE, ERIC, CINAHL, MEDLINE, Sociological abstracts and
40 Dissertation Abstracts International. The search was last conducted in 2004.

41
42 Three studies met the inclusion criteria, one of which reported data relevant to
43 service user satisfaction with care (Tennstedt, 2000). Tennstedt (2000) offered the
44 intervention group a 2-hour session to learn about and practice desirable behaviours

1 with cue cards and a preparation booklet where they could list problems and
2 medication, and found that service users were more satisfied with interpersonal
3 aspects of their care than those in a control group, although overall satisfaction
4 scores were the same. The authors concluded that interventions to educate elderly
5 service users can have positive effects in the short term, but there were few studies
6 of adequate size and follow-up, so no overall conclusions were made.
7

8 **ZWARENSTEIN2009**

9 Zwarenstein and colleagues (2009) conducted a systematic review on the effects of
10 practice-based interventions on professional practice and healthcare outcomes.
11 Studies were included if they were RCTs that assessed practice-based tools or
12 routines aimed at improving collaboration between one or more health or social care
13 professional. This update of the original systematic review searched a number of
14 electronic databases including the Cochrane Library (CDSR, CCTR and DARE), the
15 EPOC register, MEDLINE from 1950 and CINAHL from 1982. Hand searching of the
16 Journal of Interprofessional Care and citation lists of identified studies was also
17 carried out. Studies in any language were included. The search was last carried out
18 in September 2007.
19

20 A total of five studies were included in the updated review. Although service user
21 satisfaction was a primary outcome of the review, the studies included did not
22 routinely measure this outcome or it did not meet the review's outcome criteria and
23 was therefore not extracted. However, there was some evidence that audit activity
24 and quality of care may increase when external facilitators encourage collaborative
25 working (Cheater *et al.*, 2005). The authors concluded that the small number and
26 methodological limitations of the studies, the narrow range of interventions
27 investigated, and the absence of studies set in primary care or chronic care, limits the
28 conclusions that can be drawn from the review.

29 **12.3.2 Evidence summary for non-mental healthcare**

30 The evidence reviewed suggests that there are some interventions that may improve
31 service user experience of care in non-mental health settings, although it is often
32 difficult to interpret due to limitations in study design, heterogeneity of
33 interventions and outcome measures, and little data reported in the existing reviews
34 quantifying the magnitude of the effect. Nevertheless, Coulter and Ellins
35 (COULTER2006) suggest that person-centred care programmes can improve service
36 user experience of care. In particular, there is evidence that interventions that target
37 the domain of 'clear, comprehensible information and support for self-care', such as
38 communications skills training for healthcare professionals (COULTER2006),
39 Interactive Health Communication Applications (MURRAY2005), interventions
40 delivered before consultation to help service users address their information needs
41 (KINNERSLEY2007), may improve the experience of care for service users. Coulter
42 and Ellins also suggested that interventions, such as provider choice, outreach clinics

1 and walk-in centres, and public involvement in service development may increase
2 satisfaction or self-efficacy.¹³

3
4 Several other interventions had some evidence for improved satisfaction, but it was
5 inconsistent. These included the following: decision aids (OCONNOR2009),
6 discharge planning for inpatients (SHEPPERD2010), interprofessional education
7 (REEVES2008), person-centred training for healthcare professionals (LEWIN2001),
8 person-centred training for healthcare professionals plus person-centred materials
9 for service users (LEWIN2001), and recordings or summaries of service users'
10 consultations (PITKETHLY2008).

11
12

13 **12.4 EVIDENCE TO RECOMMENDATIONS**

14 The GDG discussed the lack of research conducted in mental health settings, and
15 agreed that further research should be a priority in this area. Although shared
16 decision making interventions were not strongly supported by evidence, it is an
17 important element of person-centred care, therefore the GDG agreed that health and
18 social care professionals, and services, should be encouraged to maintain this
19 principle of good practice. More generally, the GDG strongly supported the use of
20 approaches that facilitate person-centred care, and thought it appropriate to
21 recommend options that show promise, and that should be evaluated if used.

¹³ In healthcare, Bandura's self-efficacy theory suggests that service users 'are empowered and motivated to manage their health problems when they feel confident in their ability to achieve this goal' (Coulter & Ellins, 2006).

1 **12.5 RECOMMENDATIONS**

2 **12.5.1 Research recommendations**

3 **12.5.1.1** For people using adult mental health services, what is the effect of training
4 community mental health teams (CMHTs) and inpatient ward staff in the
5 use of the national quality standard and underpinning guidance on service
6 user experience, when compared to no training, on service users' experience
7 of care?

8 **12.5.1.2** For people using adult mental health services, what are the key aspects of
9 'shared decision making' that they prefer, and does a training programme
10 for health and social care professionals designed around these key aspects,
11 when compared to no training, improve service users' experience of care?

12 **12.5.1.3** For people using adult mental health services, what is the effect of 'customer
13 care' training for professionals on service user experience of care? The
14 intervention would be provided to health and social care professionals and
15 supporting staff who may come into contact with service users such as
16 receptionists, administrators, secretaries and housekeeping staff. Outcomes,
17 determined by survey, exit interviews by trained past service users and
18 selected in depth interviews, should include the experience of care,
19 perceived safety, extent of perceived control over clinical decisions by
20 service users, including those treated under the Mental Health Act and those
21 treated informally. The appropriateness of this approach for different types
22 of services (i.e., inpatient, community, outpatient clinic) should be
23 evaluated.

24 **12.5.1.4** For people using adult mental health services, what is the effect of 'person-
25 centred care' training for professionals on service user experience of care?
26 The intervention would be provided to health and social care professionals
27 and supporting staff who may come into contact with service users such as
28 receptionists, administrators, secretaries and housekeeping staff. Outcomes,
29 determined by survey, exit interviews by trained past service users and
30 selected in depth interviews, should include the experience of care,
31 perceived safety, extent of perceived control over clinical decisions by
32 service users, including those treated under the Mental Health Act and those
33 treated informally. The appropriateness of this approach for different types
34 of services (i.e., inpatient, community, outpatient clinic) should be
35 evaluated.

36
37
38
39
40
41

13. REFERENCES

- AGREE Collaboration (2003) Development and validation of an international appraisal instrument for assessing the quality of clinical practice guidelines: the AGREE project. *Quality and Safety in Health Care*, 12, 18-23.
- Appleby, L., Dennehy, J. A., Thomas, C. S., *et al.* (1999) Aftercare and clinical characteristics of people with mental illness who commit suicide: a case-control study. *Lancet*, 353, 1397-1400.
- American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV-TR)*. 4th Edition. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association, 2000.
- Alpert, J. J., Robertson, L. S., Kosa, J., *et al.* (1976) Delivery of health care for children: report of an experiment. *Pediatrics*, 57, 917-930.
- Barnes M, & Prior, D. (1995) Spoilt for choice? How consumerism can disempower public service users. *Public Money & Management*, 15, 53-58.
- Becker, M. H., Drachman, R. H., & Kirscht, J. P. (1974) A field experiment to evaluate various outcomes of continuity of physician care. *American Journal of Public Health*, 64, 1062-1070.
- Bedi, N., Chilvers, C., Churchill, R., *et al.* (2000) Assessing effectiveness of treatment of depression in primary care. Partially randomised preference trial. *British Journal of Psychiatry*, 177, 312-318.
- Bekker, H., *et al.* (1999) 'Informed decision making: an annotated bibliography and systematic review'. *Health Technology Assessment*, 3, 1.
- Berlin, J. A. (2001) Does blinding of readers affect the results of meta-analyses? *Lancet*, 350, 185-186.
- Bolas, H., Brookes, K., Scott, M., *et al.* (2004) Evaluation of a hospital based community liaison pharmacy service in Northern Ireland. *Pharmacy World & Science*, 26, 114-20.
- Bunn, M. H., O'Connor, A. M., Tansey, M. S., *et al.* (1997) Characteristics of clients with schizophrenia who express certainty or uncertainty about continuing treatment with depot neuroleptic medication. *Archives of Psychiatric Nursing*, 11, 238-248.

- 1 Campbell, S. M., Hann, M., Hacker, J., *et al.* (2001) Identifying predictors of high
2 quality care in English general practice: observational study. *British Medical Journal*,
3 323, 1-6.
4
- 5 Care Quality Commission (2009) *Inpatient Service User Survey*.
6 <http://www.nhssurveys.org/surveys/520>
7
- 8 Chandhury, H., Mahmood, A., & Valente, M. (2005) Advantages and disadvantages
9 of single-versus multiple-occupancy rooms in acute care environments: a review and
10 analysis of the literature. *Environment and Behavior*, 37, 760-786.
11
- 12 Cheater, F. M., Hearnshaw, H., Baker, R., *et al.* (2005) Can a facilitated programme
13 promote effective multidisciplinary audit in secondary care teams? An exploratory
14 trial. *International Journal of Nursing Studies*, 42, 779-91.
15
- 16 Cochrane Collaboration (2004) *Review Manager (RevMan) [Computer program]*. Version
17 4.2.7 for Windows. Oxford, England. The Cochrane Collaboration.
18
- 19 Cope, D. W., Linn, L. S., Leake, B. D., *et al.* (1986) Modification of residents' behavior
20 by preceptor feedback of patient satisfaction. *Journal of General Internal Medicine*, 1,
21 394-398.
22
- 23 Coulter, A. (2010) Do patients want a choice and does it work? *British Medical Journal*,
24 341, 973-975.
25
- 26 Coulter, A. & Ellins, J. (2006) Patient-focused interventions – A review of the
27 evidence. *Quest for Quality and Improved Performance Programme*. London: The Health
28 Foundation.
29
- 30 Cleary, T., Clamon, C., Price, M., *et al.* (1988) A reduced stimulation unit: effects on
31 patients with Alzheimer's disease and related disorders. *The Gerontologist*, 28, 511-
32 514.
33
- 34 Crawford, M. J. (2004) Suicide following discharge from inpatient psychiatric care.
35 *Advances in Psychiatric Treatment*, 10, 434-438.
36
- 37 Crawford, M.J., Rutter, D., & Thelwall, S. (2004) *Service user involvement in change*
38 *management: a literature review*. London: National Coordinating Centre for Service
39 Delivery and Organisation.
40
- 41 Damian, D., Tattersall, M. H. N. (1991) Letters to patients: improving communication
42 in cancer care. *Lancet*, 338, 923-925.
43
- 44 Darby, C., Hays, R. D. & Kletke, P. (2005) Development and evaluation of the
45 CAHPS hospital survey. *Health Services Research*, 40, 1973-1976.
46

- 1 Deeks, J. J. (2002) Issues in the selection of a summary statistic for meta-analysis of
2 clinical trials with binary outcomes. *Statistics in Medicine*, 21 (11), 1575-1600.
3
- 4 Department of Health (1991) *The patient's charter*. London: HMSO.
5
- 6 Department of Health (1999) *National Service Framework for Mental Health: Modern
7 Standards and Service Models*. London: Department of Health.
8 http://www.dh.gov.uk/en/Publicationsandstatistics/Publications/PublicationsPolicyAndGuidance/DH_4009598
9
- 10
- 11 Department of Health (2005) *Creating a patient-led NHS: delivering the NHS
12 improvement plan*. London: Department of Health.
13
- 14 Department of Health (2006a) *White Paper Our Health, Our Care, Our Say: a new
15 direction for community services*. London: Department of Health.
16
- 17 Department of Health (2006b) *Direct payments for people with mental health problems: a
18 guide to action*. London: Department of Health.
19
- 20 Department of Health (2007) *Putting people first: a shared vision and commitment to the
21 transformation of adult social care*. London: HMSO.
22
- 23 Department of Health (2008) *NHS Next Stage Review: Our vision for primary and
24 community care*. London: Department of Health.
25
- 26 Department of Health (2011) *No health without mental health: a cross-government mental
27 health outcomes strategy for people of all ages*. London: Department of Health.
28 http://www.dh.gov.uk/en/Publicationsandstatistics/Publications/PublicationsPolicyAndGuidance/DH_123766
29
- 30
- 31 Department of Health and Social Security (1975) *Better Services for the mentally ill*.
32 London: HMSO.
33
- 34 Department of Health and Social Security (1981) *Care in the community: a consultative
35 document on moving resources for care in England*. London: DHSS
36
- 37 DerSimonian, R. & Laird, N. (1986) Meta-analysis in clinical trials. *Controlled Clinical
38 Trials*, 7, 177-188.
39
- 40 Devlin, A. S. & Arneil, A. B. (2003) Health care environments and patient outcomes:
41 a review of the literature. *Environment and Behavior*, 35, 665-694.
42
- 43 Dunn, S. M., Butow, P. N., Tattersall, M. H. N., *et al.* (1993) General information tapes
44 inhibit recall of the cancer consultation. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 11, 2279-85.
45

- 1 Duncan, E., Best, C., & Hagen, S. (2010) Shared decision making interventions for
2 people with mental health conditions. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, Issue
3 1.
4
- 5 Ducharme, J. M. & Spencer, T. F. (2001) Training brain injury rehabilitation
6 therapists to use generalized teaching and interaction skills. *Brain Injury*, 15, 333-347.
7
- 8 Duxbury, J. (2002) An evaluation of staff and patient views of and strategies
9 employed to manage inpatient aggression and violence on one mental health unit: a
10 pluralistic design. *Journal of Psychiatric and Mental Health Nursing*, 9, 325-337.
11
- 12 Eccles, M. & Mason, J. (2001) How to develop cost-conscious guidelines. *Health
13 Technology Assessment*, 5 (16), 1-69.
14
- 15 Eccles, M., Freemantle, N. & Mason, J. (1998) North of England evidence based
16 guideline development project: methods of developing guidelines for efficient drug
17 use in primary care. *British Medical Journal*, 316, 1232-1235.
18
- 19 Egger, M., Juni, P., Bartlett, C., *et al.* (2003) How important are comprehensive
20 literature searches and the assessment of trial quality in systematic reviews?
21 Empirical study. *Health Technol Assess*, 7(1), 1-76.
22
- 23 Furukawa, T. A., Barbui, C., Cipriani, A., *et al.* (2006) Imputing missing standard
24 deviations in meta-analyses can provide accurate results. *Journal of Clinical
25 Epidemiology*, 59, 7-10.
26
- 27 Gibbs, S., Waters, W. E., & George, C. F. (1989) The benefits of prescription
28 information leaflets. *British Journal of Clinical Pharmacology*, 28, 345-351.
29
- 30 Goodrich, J., & Cornwell, J. (2008) Seeing the person in the patient. The Point of Care
31 review paper. London: Kings Fund, 6-17.
32
- 33 Gotlieb, J. (2000) Understanding effects of nurses, patients' hospital rooms, and
34 patients' perception of control in the perceived quality of a hospital. *Health Marketing
35 Quarterly*, 18, 1-14.
36
- 37 Gotlieb, J. (2002) Understanding the effects of nurses on the process by which
38 patients develop hospital satisfaction. *Holistic Nursing Practice*, 17, 49-60.
39
- 40 Grades of Recommendation Assessment, Development and Evaluation (GRADE)
41 Working Group (2004) Grading quality of evidence and strength of
42 recommendations. *British Medical Journal*, 328, 1490-1497.
43
- 44 Hack, T. F., Whelan, T., Olivotto, I. A., *et al.* (2007) Standardized audiotape versus
45 recorded consultation to enhance informed consent to a clinical trial in breast
46 oncology. *Psycho-Oncology*, 16, 371-376.

- 1
2 Harris, P. B., McBride, G., Ross, C., *et al.* (2002) A place to heal: environmental
3 sources of satisfaction among hospital patients. *Journal of Applied Social Psychology*,
4 32, 1276-1299.
5
6 Hamann, J., Leucht, S., & Kissling, W. (2003) Shared decision making in psychiatry.
7 *Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavica*, 107, 403-409.
8
9 Hamann, J., Cohen, R., Leucht, S., *et al.* (2005) Do patients with schizophrenia wish to
10 be involved in decisions about their medical treatment? *American Journal of*
11 *Psychiatry*, 162, 2382-4.
12
13 Hamann, J., Langer, B., Winkler, V., *et al.* (2006) Shared decision making for in-
14 patients with schizophrenia. *Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavica*, 114, 265-273.
15
16 Healthtalkonline (2011) *Experiences of Psychosis*:
17 http://www.healthtalkonline.org/mental_health/experiences_of_psychosis
18
19 Higgins, J. P. T. & Thompson, S. G. (2002) Quantifying heterogeneity in a meta-
20 analysis. *Statistics in Medicine*, 21 (11), 1539-1558.
21
22 Higgins, J. P., Thompson, S. G., Deeks, J. J., *et al.* (2003). Measuring inconsistency in
23 meta-analyses. *British Medical Journal*, 327 (7414), 557-60.
24
25 Higgins, J. P. T., Green, S. (editors). (2009) *Cochrane Handbook for Systematic Reviews of*
26 *Interventions* Version 5.0.2 [updated September 2009]. The Cochrane Collaboration,
27 2008. <http://www.cochrane-handbook.org/>
28
29 HMSO (1959) *The Mental Health Act 1959*. London: The Stationery Office.
30 http://www.legislation.gov.uk/ukpga/1959/72/pdfs/ukpga_19590072_en.pdf
31
32 HMSO (1983) *The Mental Health Act 1983*. London: The Stationery Office.
33 http://www.legislation.gov.uk/ukpga/1983/20/pdfs/ukpga_19830020_en.pdf
34
35 HMSO (2007) *The Mental Health Act 1983; amended 2007*. London: The Stationery
36 Office.
37 http://www.legislation.gov.uk/ukpga/2007/12/pdfs/ukpga_20070012_en.pdf
38
39
40 HMSO (2005) *The Mental Capacity Act 2005*. London: The Stationery Office.
41 http://www.legislation.gov.uk/ukpga/2005/9/pdfs/ukpga_20050009_en.pdf
42
43 House of Commons Social Services Committee (1985) *Community Care with Special*
44 *Reference to Adult Mentally Ill and Mentally Handicapped People*. London: HMSO.
45

- 1 Jadad, A. R., Moore, R. A., Carroll, D., *et al.* (1996) Assessing the quality of reports of
2 randomised clinical trials: is blinding necessary? *Controlled Clinical Trials*, 17, 1-12.
3
- 4 Johnson, S., Lloyd-Evans, B., Morant, N., *et al.* (2010) Alternatives to standard acute
5 in-patient care in England: roles and populations served. *The British Journal of*
6 *Psychiatry*, 197, 6-13.
7
- 8 Joos, S. K., Hickam, D. H., Gordon, G. H., *et al.* (1996) Effects of a physician
9 communication intervention on patient care outcomes. *Journal of General Internal*
10 *Medicine*, 11, 147-155.
11
- 12 Kaldenberg, D. O. (1999) The influence of having a roommate on patient satisfaction.
13 *The Satisfaction Monitor*. <http://www.pressganey.org>
14
- 15 Keep, P. J. (1977) Stimulus deprivation in windowless rooms. *Anaesthesia*, 32, 598-
16 600.
17
- 18 Keown, P., Mercer, G., & Scott, J. (2008) Retrospective analysis of hospital episode
19 statistics, involuntary admissions under the Mental Health Act 1983, and number of
20 psychiatric beds in England 1996-2006. *British Medical Journal*, 337, 1837.
21
- 22 King, E. A., Baldwin, D. S., Sinclair, J. M., *et al.* (2001) The Wessex Recent In-Patient
23 Suicide Study, 1. Case-control study of 234 recently discharged psychiatric patient
24 suicides. *British Journal of Psychiatry*, 178, 531-536.
25
- 26 King, M., Sibbald, B., Ward, E., *et al.* (2000) Randomised controlled trial of non-
27 directive counselling, cognitive-behaviour therapy and usual general practitioner
28 care in the management of depression as well as mixed anxiety and depression in
29 primary care. *Health Technol Assess*, 4, 1-83.
30
- 31 Kinnersley, P., Edwards, A. G. K., Hood, K., *et al.* (2007) Interventions before
32 consultations for helping patients address their information needs. *Cochrane Database*
33 *of Systematic Reviews*, Issue 3.
34
- 35 Knapp, P., Rayner, D. Y., & Berry, D. C. (2004) Comparison of two methods of
36 presenting risk information to patients about the side effects of medicines. *Qual Saf*
37 *Health*, 13, 176-180.
38
39
- 40 Langewitz, W. A., Eich, P., Kiss, A., *et al.* (1998) Improving communication skills: a
41 randomized controlled behaviourally oriented intervention study for residents in
42 internal medicine. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 60, 268-276.
43
- 44 Laramee, A. S., Levinsky, S. K., Sargent, J., *et al.* (2003) Case management in a
45 heterogeneous congestive heart failure population. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 163,
46 809-817.

- 1
2 Lawson, B. & Phiri, M. (2000) Hospital design. Room for improvement. *Health Service*
3 *Journal*, 110 (5688), 24-26.
4
5 Lewin, S., Skea, Z., Entwistle, V. A, *et al.* (2001) Interventions for providers to
6 promote a patient-centred approach in clinical consultations. *Cochrane Database of*
7 *Systematic Reviews*, Issue 4.
8
9 Lewis, C. C., Pantell, R. H., & Sharp, L. (1991) Increasing patient knowledge,
10 satisfaction, and involvement: randomized trial of a communication intervention.
11 *Pediatrics*, 88, 351-358.
12
13 Loh, A., Simon, D., Wills, C. E., *et al.* (2007) The effects of a shared decision-making
14 intervention in primary care of depression: a cluster-randomized controlled trial.
15 *Patient Education and Counseling*, 67, 324-332.
16
17 Martin, D. P., Hunt, J. R., & Conrad, D. A. (1990) The Planetree model hospital
18 project: an example of the patient as partner. *Hospital and Health Services*
19 *Administration*, 35, 591-601.
20
21 Martin, D. P., Diehr, P., Conrad, D. A., *et al.* (1998) Randomized trial of a patient-
22 centered hospital unit. *Patient Education and Counseling*, 34, 125-133.
23
24 McBean, B. & Blackburn, J. (1982) An evaluation of four methods of pharmacist-
25 conducted patient education. *Canadian Pharmacology Journal*, 115, 167-172.
26
27 MIND (2004) *Wardwatch*. London: MIND.
28
29 Moher, D., Weinberg, A., Hanlon, R., *et al.* (1992) Effects of a medical team
30 coordinator on length of hospital stay. *Canadian Medical Association Journal*, 146, 511-
31 515.
32
33 Morgan, D. & Stewart, N. (1999) The physical environment of special care units:
34 needs of residents with dementia from the perspective of staff and family caregivers.
35 *Qualitative Health Research*, 9, 105-119.
36
37 Mozzoni, M. P. & Bailey, J. S. (1996) Improving training methods in brain injury
38 rehabilitation. *Journal of Head Trauma Rehabilitation*, 11, 1-18.
39
40 Murray, E., Burns, J., See Tai S., *et al.* (2005) Interactive health communication
41 applications for people with chronic disease. *Cochrane Database of Systematic*
42 *Reviews*, Issue 4.
43
44 National Centre for Social Research (2010) *Community Mental Health survey*.
45 <http://www.nhssurveys.org/surveys/511>
46

- 1 Nazareth, I., Burton, A., Shulman, S., *et al.* (2001) Pharmacy discharge plan for
2 hospitalized elderly patients – a randomized controlled trial. *Age and Ageing*, 30, 33–
3 40.
4
- 5 NCCMH (2006) *Bipolar Disorder: the Management of Bipolar Disorder in Adults, Children*
6 *and Adolescents, in Primary and Secondary Care*. Leicester: The British Psychological
7 Society and the Royal College of Psychiatrists.
8
- 9 NCCMH (2008) *Drug Misuse: Psychosocial Interventions*. Leicester: The British
10 Psychological Society and the Royal College of Psychiatrists.
11
- 12 NCCMH (2009a) *Antisocial Personality Disorder: Treatment, Management and*
13 *Prevention*. Leicester: The British Psychological Society and the Royal College of
14 Psychiatrists.
15
- 16 NCCMH (2009b) *Borderline Personality Disorder: Treatment and Management*. Leicester:
17 The British Psychological Society and the Royal College of Psychiatrists.
18
- 19 NCCMH (2010a) *Depression: the Treatment and Management of Depression in Adults*
20 *(Update)*. Leicester: The British Psychological Society and the Royal College of
21 Psychiatrists.
22
- 23 NCCMH (2010b) *Schizophrenia: Core Interventions in the Treatment and Management of*
24 *Schizophrenia in Adults in Primary and Secondary Care (Updated)*. Leicester: The British
25 Psychological Society and the Royal College of Psychiatrists.
26
- 27 NCCMH (2011) *Alcohol-use disorders: Diagnosis, Assessment and Management of*
28 *Harmful Drinking and Alcohol Dependence*. Leicester: The British Psychological Society
29 and the Royal College of Psychiatrists.
30
- 31 NCCMH (2011) *Common Mental Health Disorders: Identification and Pathways to Care*.
32 Leicester: The British Psychological Society and the Royal College of Psychiatrists.
33
- 34 NCCMH (in press) *Psychosis with Coexisting Substance Misuse: Assessment and*
35 *Management in Adults and Young People*. Leicester: The British Psychological Society
36 and the Royal College of Psychiatrists.
37
- 38 NCCMH (in preparation) *Self-harm: Longer Term Management in Adults, Children and*
39 *Young People*. Leicester: The British Psychological Society and the Royal College of
40 Psychiatrists.
41
- 42 Nguyen, P. L. N., Briancon, S., Empereur, F., *et al.* (2002) Factors determining
43 inpatient satisfaction with care. *Social Science & Medicine*, 54, 493-504.
44
- 45 National Health Service (1962) *A hospital plan for England and Wales*. London:
46 HMSO.

- 1
2 NICE (2005) *Violence*. Clinical guideline 25. London: NICE.
3 <http://www.nice.org.uk/CG25>
4
- 5 NICE (2006) *Bipolar Disorder: the Management of Bipolar Disorder in Adults, Children and*
6 *Adolescents, in Primary and Secondary Care*. NICE clinical guideline 38. London: NICE.
7 <http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG38>
8
- 9 NICE (2009a) *Borderline Personality Disorder: Treatment and Management*. NICE clinical
10 guideline 78. London: NICE. <http://www.nice.org.uk/CG78>
11
- 12 NICE (2009b) *Schizophrenia: Core Interventions in the Treatment and Management of*
13 *Schizophrenia in Adults in Primary and Secondary Care (Updated)*. NICE clinical
14 guideline 82. London: NICE. <http://www.nice.org.uk/CG82>
15
- 16 NICE (2009c) *The Guidelines Manual*. London: NICE.
17
- 18 Nicolson, D., Knapp, P., Raynor, D. K., *et al.* (2009) Written information about
19 individual medicines for consumers. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, Issue 2.
20
- 21 O'Connor, A. M., Stacey, D., Entwistle, V., *et al.* (2003) Decision aids for people
22 facing health treatment or screening decisions. *Cochrane Database of Systematic*
23 *Reviews*, Issue 2.
24
- 25 Ong, L. M. L., Visser, M. R. M., Lammes, F.B., *et al.* (2000) Effect of providing cancer
26 patients with the audiotaped initial consultation on satisfaction, recall, and quality of
27 life: a randomized, double-blind study. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 18 (16), 3052–
28 3060.
29
- 30 Parry, R. (2008) Are interventions to enhance communication performance in allied
31 health professionals effective, and how should they be delivered? Direct and indirect
32 evidence. *Patient Education and Counseling*, 73, 186-195.
33
- 34 Percy Commission (1957) *Report of the Royal Commission on the Law Relating to Mental*
35 *Illness and Mental Deficiency 1954-1957*. London: HMSO.
36
- 37 Peveler, R., George, C., Kinmonth, A. L., *et al.* (1999) Effect of antidepressant drug
38 counselling and information leaflets on adherence to drug treatment in primary care:
39 randomised controlled trial. *British Medical Journal*, 319, 612–615.
40
- 41 Pitkethly, M., MacGillivray, S., Ryan, R. (2008) Recordings or summaries of
42 consultations for people with cancer. *The Cochrane Collaboration*, Issue 4.
43
- 44 Pill, R., Stott, N. C. H., Rollnick, S. R., *et al.* (1998) A randomized controlled trial of an
45 intervention designed to improve the care given in general practice to type II

- 1 diabetic patients: patient outcomes and professional ability to change behaviour.
2 *Family Practice*, 15, 229–35.
3
- 4 Priebe, S., McCabe, R., Bullenkamp, J., *et al.* (2007) Structured patient-clinician
5 communication and 1-year outcome in community mental healthcare. Cluster
6 randomised controlled trial. *British Journal of Psychiatry*, 191, 420–426.
7
- 8 Priebe, S., Katsakou, C., Amos, T., *et al.* (2009) Patients' views and readmissions one
9 year after involuntary hospitalisation. *British Journal of Psychiatry*, 194, 49-54.
10
- 11 Putnam, S. M., Stiles, W. B., Jacob, M. C., *et al.* (1988) Teaching the medical interview:
12 an intervention study. *Journal of General Internal Medicine*, 3, 38–47.
13
- 14 Quirk, A. & Lelliott, P. (2000) What do we know about life on acute psychiatric wards
15 in the UK? A review of the research evidence. *Social Science and Medicine*, 53, 1565-1.
16
- 17 Quirk, A. (2008) *How pressure is applied in 'negotiated' decisions about medication.*
18 *Chapter 5 in PhD Thesis: 'Obstacles to Shared Decision-Making in Psychiatric Practice:*
19 *findings from three observational studies'*. Uxbridge: Brunel University.
20
- 21 Quirk, A., Chaplin, R., Lelliott, P., *et al.* (2009) The negotiation of prescribing
22 decisions: some good practice issues. In *Medicines Management in Mental Health* (eds
23 N. Harris, J. Baker & R. Gray), pp133-145. Oxford: Wiley-Blackwell.
24
- 25 Quirk, A., Chaplin, R., Lelliott, P. & Seale, C. How pressure is applied in shared
26 decisions about antipsychotic medication: a conversation analytic study of
27 psychiatric outpatient consultations. *Sociology of Health & Illness*, in press.
28
- 29 Reeves, S., Zwarenstein, M., Goldman, J., *et al.* (2009) Interpersonal education effects
30 on professional practice and health care outcomes (Review). *Cochrane Collaboration of*
31 *Systematic Reviews*, Issue 4.
- 32 Reynolds, P. M., Sanson-Fisher, R. W., Desmond-Poole, A., *et al.* (1981) Cancer and
33 communication: information-giving in an oncology clinic. *British Medical Journal*, 282,
34 1449–51.
35
- 36 Robinson, G. L, Gilbertson, A. D., & Litwack, L. (1986) The effects of a psychiatric
37 patient education to medication program on post discharge compliance. *The*
38 *Psychiatric Quarterly*, 58, 113–118.
39
- 40 Rokke, P. D., Tomhave, J. A., & Jovic, Z. (1999) The role of client choice and target
41 selection in self-management therapy for depression in older adults. *Psychology of*
42 *Aging*, 14, 155–169.
43
- 44 Rogers, A., Pilgrim, D., & Lacey, R. (1993) *Experiencing Psychiatry: User Views of*
45 *Services*. Macmillan/Mind Publications, London.
46

- 1 Rose, D (2001) *Users' Voices: the perspectives of mental health service users on community*
2 *and hospital care*. London: The Sainsbury Centre for Mental Health.
3
- 4 Roter, D., Rosenbaum, J., de Negri, B., *et al.* (1998) The effects of a continuing medical
5 education programme in interpersonal communication skills on doctor practice and
6 patient satisfaction in Trinidad and Tobago. *Medical Education*, 32, 181-189.
7
- 8 Rowley, M. J., Hensley, M. J., Brinsmead, M. W., *et al.* (1995) Continuity of care by a
9 midwife team versus routine care during pregnancy and birth: a randomized trial.
10 *Medical Journal of Australia*, 163, 289-293.
11
- 12 Salzberg Statement on shared decision making (2011) *British Medical Journal*:
13 (<http://press.psprings.co.uk/bmj/march/SalzburgStatement.pdf>).
14
- 15 Saultz & Albedaiwi (2004) Interpersonal Continuity of Care and Patient Satisfaction:
16 A Critical Review. *Annals of Family Medicine*, 2, 445-451.
17
- 18 Schunemann, H. J., Best, D., Vist, G. *et al.* for the GRADE Working Group (2003)
19 Letters, numbers, symbols and words: how to communicate grades of evidence and
20 recommendations. *Canadian Medical Association Journal*, 169, 677-80.
21
- 22 Scott, T., Mannion, R., Davies, H., *et al.* (2003) The quantitative measurement of
23 organisational culture in health care: a review of the available instruments. *Health*
24 *Service Research*, 38, 923-945.
25
- 26 Seale, C., Chaplin, R., Lelliott, P., *et al.* (2007) Antipsychotic medication, sedation and
27 mental clouding: An observational study of psychiatric consultations. *Social Science*
28 *& Medicine*, 65, 698-711.
29
- 30 Sepucha, K. R., Belkora, J. K., Tripathy, D., *et al.* (2000) Building bridges between
31 physicians and patients: results of a pilot study examining new tools for
32 collaborative decision making in breast cancer. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 18, 1230-
33 1238.
34
- 35 Sharac, J., McCrone, P., Sabes-Figuera, R., *et al.* (2010) Nurse and patient activities
36 and interaction on psychiatric inpatients wards: A literature review. *International*
37 *Journal of Nursing Studies*, 47, 909-917.
38
- 39 Shepperd, S., McClaran, J., Phillips, C. O., *et al.* (2010) Discharge planning from
40 hospital to home. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, Issue 1.
41
- 42 Smith, R. C., Mettler, J. A., Stoffelmayr, B. E., *et al.* (1995) Improving residents'
43 confidence in using psychosocial skills. *Journal of General Internal Medicine*, 10, 315-
44 20.
45

- 1 Smith, R. C., Lyles, J. S., Mettler, J., *et al.* (1998) The effectiveness of intensive training
2 for residents in interviewing: a randomized controlled study. *Annals of Internal*
3 *Medicine*, 128, 118-126.
4
- 5 Swanson, J.W., Swartz, M. S., Elbogen, E. B., *et al.* (2006) Facilitated psychiatric
6 advance directives: a randomized trial of an intervention to foster advance treatment
7 planning among persons with severe mental illness. *American Journal of Psychiatry*,
8 163, 1943-1951.
9
- 10 Tennstedt, S. L. (2000) Empowering older patients to communicate more effectively
11 in the medical encounter. *Clinics in Geriatric Medicine*, 16, 61-70.
12
- 13 Thom, D. H., Bloch, D. A., & Segal, E. S. (1999) An intervention to increase patients'
14 trust in their physicians. *Academic Medicine*, 74, 195-198.
15
- 16 Walsh, J. & Boyle, J. (2009) Improving acute psychiatric hospital services according
17 to inpatient experiences. A user-led piece of research as a means to empowerment.
18 *Issues in Mental Health Nursing*, 30, 31-8.
19
- 20 Warner, J. P. *et al.* (2000) 'Patient-held shared care records for individuals with
21 mental illness. Randomised controlled evaluation'. *British Journal of Psychiatry*, 177,
22 319-324.
23
- 24 Wasson, J. H., Sauvigne, A. E., Mogielnicki, R. P, *et al.* (1984) Continuity of outpatient
25 medical care in elderly men: a randomized trial. *Journal of the American Medical*
26 *Association*, 252, 2413-2417.
27
- 28 Weinberger, M., Oddone, E. Z., & Henderson, W. G. (1996) Does increased access to
29 primary care reduce hospital admissions? Veterans Affairs Cooperative Study Group
30 on Primary Care and Hospital Readmissions. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 334,
31 1441-1447.
32
- 33 Wetzels, R., Harmsen, M., VanWeel, C., *et al.* (2007) Interventions for improving
34 older patients' involvement in primary care episodes. *Cochrane Database of Systematic*
35 *Reviews* Issue 1.
36
- 37 World Health Organisation (1992) ICD-10 Classification of Mental and Behavioural
38 Disorders. *ICD-10 Classification of Mental and Behavioural Disorders*. Geneva: World
39 Health Organisation.
40
- 41 World Health Organization (2007) *People-centred health care: A policy framework*.
42 Geneva: World Health Organisation.
43
- 44 Zwarenstein, M., Goldman, J., Reeves, S. (2009) Interprofessional collaboration:
45 effects of practice-based interventions on professional practice and healthcare
46 outcomes. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, Issue 3.

1	14. APPENDICES	
2	Appendix 1: Scope for the development of the guidance	188
3	Appendix 2: Declarations of interests by GDG members.....	193
4	Appendix 3: Special advisors to the Guidance Development Group	199
5	Appendix 4: Stakeholders and experts who submitted comments in response to the	
6	consultation draft of the guidance	200
7	Appendix 5: Review protocols.....	201
8	Appendix 6: Matrix of service user experience.....	206
9		
10	Appendix 7: Search strategies for the identification of studies	
11	(interventions review).....	On CD
12		
13	Appendix 8: Included study characteristics tables.....	On CD
14		
15	Appendix 9: Methodology checklists (interventions review).....	On CD
16		
17	Appendix 10: List of excluded studies (interventions review).....	On CD
18		
19	Appendix 11: Key problems - survey results.....	On CD
20		
21	Appendix 12: Key problems - qualitative review matrix for each	
22	guideline.....	On CD
23		
24	Appendix 13: Key problems - qualitative analyses matrix for each	
25	guideline.....	On CD
26		
27	Appendix 14: High priority research recommendations.....	On CD
28		
29		
30		
31		

1 APPENDIX 1: SCOPE FOR THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE

2 GUIDANCE

3 Final version

4

5 1 Service user experience in adult mental health: improving the experience of

6 care for people using adult NHS mental health services

7

8 1.1 Service user experience in adult mental health

9

10 2 Introduction

11

12 2.1 *Guidance*

13 This guidance will make recommendations on the appropriate treatment and care of
14 people within the NHS. The recommendations are based on the best available
15 evidence.

16

17 This scope defines what the guidance will (and will not) examine, and what the
18 guidance developers will consider. The scope is based on the referral from the
19 Department of Health.

20

21 2.2 *Quality standards*

22 Quality standards are a set of specific, concise quality statements and measures that
23 act as markers of high-quality, cost-effective patient care, covering the treatment and
24 prevention of different diseases and conditions.

25

26 For this topic a NICE quality standard will be produced based on the guidance
27 recommendations. The guidance and the quality standard will be published at the
28 same time.

29

30 This scope defines the areas of care for which specific quality statements and
31 measures will (and will not) be developed.

32

33 3 The remit

34

35 The Department of Health has asked NICE: 'to produce a quality standard and
36 guidance on patient experience in adult mental health'.

37

38 4 Need for guidance

39

40 *Background*

- 41 a. Over the past few years several documents and initiatives have highlighted
- 42 the importance of the service user's experience and the need to focus on
- 43 improving these experiences where possible.

44

- 1 • Lord Darzi’s report ‘High quality care for all’ (2008) highlighted the
2 importance of the entire service user experience within the NHS,
3 ensuring people are treated with compassion, dignity and respect
4 within a clean, safe and well-managed environment.
- 5 • The development of the NHS Constitution (2009) was one of several
6 recommendations from Lord Darzi’s report. The Constitution describes
7 the purpose, principles and values of the NHS and illustrates what
8 staff, service users and the public can expect from the service. Since the
9 Health Act came into force in January 2010, service providers and
10 commissioners of NHS care have had a legal obligation to take the
11 Constitution into account in all their decisions and actions.

12
13 b. The King’s Fund charitable foundation has developed a comprehensive policy
14 resource – ‘Seeing the person in the patient: the point of care review paper’
15 (2008). Some of the topics explored in the paper will be used in the
16 development of this guidance and quality standard.

17
18 c. National initiatives aimed at improving service users’ experience of
19 healthcare include NHS Choices, a comprehensive information service that
20 helps people to manage their healthcare and provides service users and carers
21 with information and choice about their care. Local initiatives, such as patient
22 advice and liaison services (PALS), have also been introduced.

23
24 d. Despite these initiatives, there is evidence to suggest that further work is
25 needed to deliver the best possible experience for users of NHS services.

26
27 e. In 2005 the Department of Health published ‘Delivering race equality in
28 mental health care: an action plan for reform inside and outside services and
29 the government’s response to the independent inquiry into the death of David
30 Bennett’. The report contained recommendations about the delivery of mental
31 health care to service users, in particular those from black and minority ethnic
32 communities. The recommendations also address wider issues in mental
33 health settings, such as the safe use of physical interventions.

34
35 f. High quality care should be clinically effective, safe and be provided in a way
36 that ensures the service user has the best possible experience of care. This
37 service user experience guidance, and the quality standard that will be
38 developed from it, will aim to ensure that users of mental health services have
39 the best possible experience of care from the NHS.

40 41 4.2 *Current practice*

42 Current practice varies across all healthcare settings.

43 44 5 **The guidance and quality standard**

1 The guidance and quality standard will outline a level of service that people using
2 NHS mental health services should expect to receive. It is recognised that some
3 people or groups may have had poor experiences of healthcare and need further
4 consideration in the delivery of high quality care (for example, because of their age,
5 disability, race, religion or belief). The specific needs of such people or groups will
6 not be addressed within this guidance and quality standard, but the principles may
7 be of use in local strategies to narrow inequalities in service user experience.
8

9 5.1 *Population*

10 5.1.1 Groups that will be covered

- 11
12 a. People who use adult NHS mental health services.
13

14 5.1.2 Groups that will not be covered

- 15
16 a. Mental health service users using NHS services for physical health problems.
17
18 b. Carers of people using NHS services. The guidance and quality standard will
19 examine the role of carers have in the experience of people using NHS mental
20 health services but will not address carers' experiences of services.
21

22 5.2 *Healthcare setting*

- 23 a. Community and inpatient mental health settings.
24

25 5.3 *Objectives*

- 26 a. Develop recommendations and quality standards to provide a framework
27 that describes the key requirements for providing a high quality service user
28 experience. We do not expect the guidance to make recommendations on all
29 elements of the framework.
30
31 b. Identify quality measures that set the expected degree of achievement. The
32 NICE Quality Standards team will be responsible for the development of the
33 quality measures.
34
35 c. Identify key areas for improvement in current service user experience.
36
37 d. Identify key areas for further research that are likely to improve our
38 understanding of how to measure and improve the experience of care within
39 adult mental health services.
40

41 5.4 *Methods*

- 42 a. The National Collaborating Centre for Mental Health will develop a
43 framework of service user experience.
44
45 b. A number of frameworks and reviews of frameworks already exist,
46 developed and tested through differing approaches. The principles of these

1 frameworks will be considered but a comparison will not be made between
2 them.

3
4 c. The Guideline Development Group will consider these frameworks and their
5 common themes, and agree a list of key themes from which recommendations
6 will be developed. The quality standards will be framed by these
7 recommendations. This process will be informed by the information gathered
8 in 4.4 e and f.

9
10 d. NICE will also use the framework to develop quality measures.

11
12 e. A high level literature review will be conducted to identify and synthesise
13 qualitative and quantitative studies that have examined service user
14 experience and interventions to improve it.

15
16 f. NICE clinical guidelines and public health guidance published in the past 5
17 years will be reviewed to identify questions, evidence reviews and
18 recommendations that the Guideline Development Groups considered
19 important for improving service user experience.

20
21 g. The GDG will identify domains which underpin the experience of care for
22 which quality standards will be developed. Descriptive statements will be
23 developed for these domains. These are likely to be domains for which
24 recommendations have already been included in NICE guidelines and where
25 there is an evidence base to inform quality standards. The GDG will decide on
26 those areas where the NCCMH will develop reviews to inform quality
27 standards.

28
29 h. The guidance, and the quality statements and measures developed for the
30 quality standard, will be structured by a care pathway through adult mental
31 health including compulsory treatment under the Mental Health Act.

32
33 i. Stakeholders will be invited to comment on the draft recommendations and
34 quality standard through a formal consultation.

35
36 *5.5 Economic aspects*

37 Developers will take into account both the clinical and cost effectiveness of
38 interventions. If interventions are identified that may improve service user
39 experience, a cost impact analysis will be undertaken.

40
41 If there is sufficient evidence to offer a choice between alternative interventions, then
42 a cost effectiveness analysis will be undertaken using existing NICE methods. The
43 preferred unit of effectiveness for this will be the quality-adjusted life year (QALY),
44 and the costs considered will usually be only from an NHS and personal social
45 services (PSS) perspective.

1 5.6 *Status*

2 5.6.1 Scope

3

4 This is the final scope.

5

6 5.6.3 *Timing*

7 The development of the guidance recommendations will begin in January 2011.

8 Publication of the guidance and quality standard is expected in October 2011.

9

10 **6 Related NICE guidance**

11 NICE is currently developing the following related guidance (details available from
12 the NICE website):

13

- 14 • Patient experience in generic terms. NICE guidance and quality standard.
15 Publication expected October 2011.

16

17

18

19

20

21

1 APPENDIX 2: DECLARATIONS OF INTERESTS BY GDG

2 MEMBERS

3 With a range of practical experience relevant to service user experience in the GDG,
4 members were appointed because of their understanding and expertise in this area.
5

6 To minimise and manage any potential conflicts of interest, and to avoid any public
7 concern that commercial or other financial interests have affected the work of the
8 GDG and influenced guidance, members of the GDG must declare as a matter of
9 public record any interests held by themselves or their families which fall under
10 specified categories (see below). These categories include any relationships they
11 have with the healthcare industries, professional organisations and organisations for
12 service users and their families/carers.
13

14 Individuals invited to join the GDG were asked to declare their interests before being
15 appointed. To allow the management of any potential conflicts of interest that might
16 arise during the development of the guideline, GDG members were also asked to
17 declare their interests at each GDG meeting throughout the guideline development
18 process. The interests of all the members of the GDG are listed below, including
19 interests declared prior to appointment and during the guideline development
20 process.

21 *Categories of interest*

22 **Paid employment**

23

24 **Personal pecuniary interest:** financial payments or other benefits from either the
25 manufacturer or the owner of the product or service under consideration in this
26 guideline, or the industry or sector from which the product or service comes. This
27 includes holding a directorship, or other paid position; carrying out consultancy or
28 fee paid work; having shareholdings or other beneficial interests; receiving expenses
29 and hospitality over and above what would be reasonably expected to attend
30 meetings and conferences.
31

32 **Personal family interest:** financial payments or other benefits from the healthcare
33 industry that were received by a member of your family.
34

35 **Non-personal pecuniary interest:** financial payments or other benefits received by
36 the GDG member's organisation or department, but where the GDG member has not
37 personally received payment, including fellowships and other support provided by
38 the healthcare industry. This includes a grant or fellowship or other payment to
39 sponsor a post, or contribute to the running costs of the department; commissioning
40 of research or other work; contracts with, or grants from, NICE.
41

42 **Personal non-pecuniary interest:** these include, but are not limited to, clear opinions
43 or public statements you have made about individuals with psychosis and substance

- 1 misuse problems, holding office in a professional organisation or advocacy group
 2 with a direct interest in psychosis and substance misuse, other reputational risks
 3 relevant to psychosis and substance misuse.
 4

Guideline Development Group - Declarations of interest	
Dr Mike Crawford (chair)	
Employment	Reader in Mental Health Services Research, Imperial College London
Personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal family interest	None
Non-personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal non-pecuniary interest	None
Non-personal non-pecuniary interest	None
Action Taken	None
Dr Diana Rose (chair)	
Employment	Reader in User-Led Research, Co-director Service User Research Enterprise (SURE), Institute of Psychiatry, King's College, London
Personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal family interest	None
Non-personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal non-pecuniary interest	None
Non-personal non-pecuniary interest	None
Action Taken	None
Dr. Tim Kendall	
Employment	Director, NCCMH Medical Director, Sheffield Health and Social Care Trust Consultant Adult Psychiatrist
Personal pecuniary interest	Grant holder for £1.44 million per year (approx) from NICE for guidelines work. Work with NICE International. Undertake some research into mental health, and the mental health workforce for DH, Royal College of Psychiatrists and the academy of medical royal colleges.
Personal family interest	None
Non-personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal non-pecuniary interest	None
Action Taken	None
Dr Janice Allister	
Employment	GP, Peterborough
Personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal family interest	None
Non-personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal non-pecuniary interest	I am the Royal College of General Practitioners Child Safeguarding Lead.(unpaid).

	My husband is the Bishop of Peterborough I am a member of the Church of England (no subscription); the Balint Society, the Primary Care Child Safeguarding Forum and the Christian Medical Fellowship. For the later societies I pay subscriptions.
Action Taken	None
Ms Siobhan Armstrong	
Employment	Lead Nurse-Intensive Case Reviews, Newcastle and North Tyneside Primary Care Trusts and Northumberland Care Trust
Personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal family interest	None
Non-personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal non-pecuniary interest	None
Action Taken	None
Mr Adam Black	
Employment	Representing service user and carer interests
Personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal family interest	None
Non-personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal non-pecuniary interest	None
Action Taken	None
Ms Beverley Costa	
Employment	CEO and clinical director, Mothertongue counselling and listening service
Personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal family interest	None
Non-personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal non-pecuniary interest	As the CEO of Mothertongue multi- ethnic counselling service I have an interest in culturally sensitive mental health provision and in improving the quality of Mental health interpreting commissioning , provision and regulation.
Action Taken	None
Dr Jane Cronin-Davis	
Employment	Senior Lecturer, Occupational Therapist, York St John University
Personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal family interest	None
Non-personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal non-pecuniary interest	None
Action Taken	None
Ms Jan Cubison	
Employment	Clinical Service Manager, Sheffield Perinatal Mental Health Service, Sheffield Health & Social Care Foundation Trust
Personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal family interest	None
Non-personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal non-pecuniary interest	None

Action Taken	None
Ms Victoria Green	
Employment	Representing service user and carer interests
Personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal family interest	None
Non-personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal non-pecuniary interest	None
Action Taken	None
Ms Mary Nettle	
Employment	Mental Health User Consultant
Personal pecuniary interest	<p>I am paid lay member for a number of boards/committees:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Mental Health Act commission now part of the Care Quality Commission - ensuring patients rights are upheld under the Mental Health Act 1983 revised 2007. • The Health Technology Assessment panel assessing research proposals for psychological and community therapies. • The Involve standing group. • Service User Recovery Forum and Policy Committee of Royal College of Psychiatrists. • Service Users in Research for MHRN (Mental Health Research Network) as HOE Heart of England Hub representative • Worcestershire Mental Health Partnership NHS Trust supporting workforce to implement Big Recovery programme. • FRA (Fundamental Rights Agency) as member of advisory board on research project for ENUSP (European Network of Users (ex) users and Survivors of Psychiatry) • MHE (Mental Health Europe) - evaluating their work under the EU Progress Project.
Personal family interest	None
Non-personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal non-pecuniary interest	None
Action Taken	None
Mr Leroy Simpson	
Employment	Representing service user and carer interests
Personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal family interest	None

Non-personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal non-pecuniary interest	None
Action Taken	None
Dr Clive Travis	
Employment	Representing service user and carer interests
Personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal family interest	None
Non-personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal non-pecuniary interest	I am interested in mitigating against suicide caused by drug side effects, and also in incentives, personal budgets and universal benefits.
Action Taken	None
Mr Peter Woodhams	
Employment	Carer
Personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal family interest	None
Non-personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal non-pecuniary interest	None
Action Taken	None
NCCMH Staff	
Mr Benedict Anigbogu	
Employment	Health Economist, NCCMH
Personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal family interest	None
Non-personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal non-pecuniary interest	None
Action Taken	None
Ms. Marie Halton	
Employment	Research Assistant, NCCMH
Personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal family interest	None
Non-personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal non-pecuniary interest	None
Action Taken	None
Ms. Katherine Leggett	
Employment	Project Manager
Personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal family interest	None
Non-personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal non-pecuniary interest	None
Action Taken	None
Ms Melinda Smith	
Employment	Research Assistant, NCCMH
Personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal family interest	None
Non-personal pecuniary interest	None

Personal non-pecuniary interest	None
Action Taken	None
Ms. Sarah Stockton	
Employment	Senior Information Scientist, NCCMH
Personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal family interest	None
Non-personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal non-pecuniary interest	None
Action Taken	None
Dr Clare Taylor	
Employment	Editor, NCCMH
Personal family interest	None
Non-personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal non-pecuniary interest	None
Action Taken	None
Dr. Craig Whittington	
Employment	Senior Systematic Reviewer, NCCMH
Personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal family interest	None
Non-personal pecuniary interest	None
Personal non-pecuniary interest	None
Action Taken	None

1

2

1 **APPENDIX 3: SPECIAL ADVISORS TO THE GUIDANCE**

2 **DEVELOPMENT GROUP**

3

4

5

Joanna Goodrich

Glenn Robert

Laura Griffith

Sarah Carr

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

1 **APPENDIX 4: STAKEHOLDERS AND EXPERTS WHO SUBMITTED**
2 **COMMENTS IN RESPONSE TO THE CONSULTATION DRAFT OF**
3 **THE GUIDANCE**

4 **Stakeholders**

5 **Experts**

6

7

8

9

10

1 APPENDIX 5: REVIEW PROTOCOLS

	Key problems in current service user experience
Review question(s)	RQ 1.1 For people who use adult NHS mental health services, what are the key problems associated with their experience of care?
Secondary question(s)	RQ 1.2 For people who use adult NHS mental health services, what would help improve the experience of care?
Objectives	To identify the key problems in current service user experience of NHS mental health services
Criteria for considering studies for the review	
Types of participants (population)	All people who use NHS inpatient and community adult mental health services
Intervention	Inpatient and community adult mental health services
Comparator	N/A
Critical outcomes	Key problems associated with the experience of care (including examples of poor experience)
Study design	Qualitative research and surveys/complaints about service user experience
Include unpublished data?	Yes
Restriction by date?	No
Minimum sample size	N/A
Study setting	Community and inpatient adult mental health services
Search strategy	Search all existing NICE mental health guidelines for qualitative research and surveys of service user experience (including complaints from service users)
Other resources	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • http://www.healthtalkonline.org/ • Care Quality Commission Surveys: • Community mental health survey (2010): http://www.nhssurveys.org/surveys/511 • Inpatient Service User Survey (2009): http://www.nhssurveys.org/surveys/520 • Survey conducted by MIND (Rogers A, Pilgrim D, Lacey R (1993) <i>Experiencing Psychiatry: User Views of Services</i>. Macmillan/ Mind Publications, London.) • Quality Care commission report: http://www.cqc.org.uk/_db/_documents/20100315_Mental_health_5_year_action_plan_FINAL.pdf
The review strategy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Narrative synthesis of reviews of qualitative research published in existing NICE mental health guidelines: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Alcohol dependence and harmful alcohol use (includes a review of published qualitative studies) • Antisocial personality disorder (ASPD) (includes review of studies exploring the views and experiences of people with personality disorder) • Bipolar disorder (includes review of qualitative literature and surveys) • Borderline personality disorder (BPD) (includes review of qualitative literature) • Depression update (includes review of qualitative literature) • Drug misuse: psychosocial interventions (DMP) (includes overview of 'treatment journeys' based both on interviews conducted by Salter and colleagues (2005) • Psychosis with substance abuse (PSM) (includes review of qualitative

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> research) • Self-harm – longer term management (under development) <p>The narrative synthesis will utilise the matrix of service user experience (see Appendix 6) to help categorise themes.</p> <p>Step 1: Characterise the evidence base from each guideline using a study characteristics table - this will be used to provide an overview of the type of analysis done for each guideline (include: the guideline search strategy, the eligibility criteria, the number of studies included, the size and design of the included studies, the location [country & setting] of each included study, plus any other relevant details)</p> <p>Step 2: For each guideline, extract all themes into the relevant matrix (1 per guideline). Then highlight relevant themes.</p> <p>Step 3: Transfer relevant themes from each matrix into text (use a subsection for each point on the pathway, with sub-headings for each domain).</p> <p>Step 4: Write an overall narrative summary of the key themes for each point on the pathway (triangulated across guidelines and evidence type).</p> <p>Step 5: Draft the chapter including a subsection for step 1, and then subsections for each key point on the pathway (the narrative summaries produced at step 4 will appear at the end of each of these subsections).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Narrative synthesis of qualitative analyses conducted for the current guidance (Healthtalkonline – Experience of psychosis) or conducted for previous NICE mental health guidelines using healthtalkonline or similar website (Depression/DCHP/PSM/DMP). 3. Analysis of NHS surveys of mental health service user experience. Where gaps in the evidence base were identified, other survey results (e.g., Survey conducted by MIND of users’ views of services). 4. Triangulation of common themes from steps 1-3.
Additional notes	<p>Problems clearly associated with treatment in primary care will not be included.</p> <p>Problems to do with prison services will not be included.</p>

1

2

	Interventions for improving service user experience
Review question(s)	RQ 2.1 For people who use adult NHS mental health services, do interventions that aim to improve the experience of care, when compared to standard care, produce meaningful improvements in the experience of care?
Secondary question(s)	RQ 2.2 For people who use adult NHS mental health services, what service-level team configurations, when compared to standard care, improve the experience of care? RQ 2.3 For team configurations shown to improve the experience of care, what are the common characteristics that appear to be associated with good service user experience?
Objectives	To determine whether interventions aiming to improve the experience of users of mental health services produce meaningful improvements in the experience of care.
Criteria for considering studies for the review	
Types of participants (population)	All people who use inpatient and community adult mental health services
Intervention	Interventions that aim to improve the experience of care, including: Interventions aiming to change health provider behaviour (e.g., interventions for healthcare professionals that aim to promote person-centred approaches in clinical consultations) Interventions aiming to improve the relationship between the service user and healthcare professional (e.g., shared decision making interventions) Service-level team configurations that have been recommended for use in a NICE mental health guideline (General care: community mental health teams, crisis resolution and home treatment teams, the care programme approach, acute day hospital care; Specialist services: assertive outreach, early intervention services)
Comparator	Standard care or any other control
Critical and important outcomes	Any valid measure of service user experience of care (e.g., Consumer Assessment of Healthcare Providers and Systems Hospital survey ^{14 15 16}), satisfaction, or evaluation of care.
Other outcomes (not regarded as critical or important)	Measures of quality of life, number of people leaving the study early for any reason.
Study design	Any
Include unpublished data?	Yes
Restriction by date?	1985 (based on advice from the Chairs, research conducted before 1983-85 is unlikely to be applicable to the modern healthcare service)
Minimum sample size	N/A
Study setting	Community and inpatient adult mental health services

¹⁴ Darby C, Hays RD, Kletke P. Development and evaluation of the CAHPS hospital survey. *Health Serv Res* 2005;40: 1973-6.

¹⁵ Goldstein E, Farquhar S, M, Crofton C, Darby C, Garfinkel S. Measuring hospital care from the patients' perspective: an overview of the CAHPS Hospital Survey development process. *Health Serv Res* 2005;40:1977-95.

¹⁶ Cleary, P. 1999. "The Increasing Importance of Patient Surveys." *British Medical Journal* 319: 720-1.

Search strategy	<p>Reviews cited by Goodrich & Cornwell (2008)¹⁷ or included in the Cochrane Consumers and Communication Group or the Cochrane Effective Practice and Organisation of Care Group list of reviews will be assessed for eligibility and included where relevant. Additionally, the following websites will be checked for eligible reviews:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Health Issues Centre • The Studer Group • Planetree • The Picker Institute • The Commonwealth Fund • The Schwartz Center • Implementation Science • Canadian Agency for Drugs and Technologies in Health
Searching other resources	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reference lists of all identified papers will be searched. • The GDG will be asked if they know of any evidence not identified during search. • Experts identified during the search/GDG meeting will be contacted. • Snowballing/reference tracking. • Grey literature searches. • Hand searching key journals.
Existing reviews	
Updated	Coulter A, Ellins J (2006). Patient-focused Interventions: A review of the evidence. London: Health Foundation.
Not updated	Goodrich & Cornwell (2008)
General search filter used	Service User Experience
Question specific search filter	TBC
Amendments to filter/search strategy	TBC
The review strategy	<p>A simplified matrix (based on Appendix 6) will be used to classify existing systematic reviews that meet minimum criteria for methodological quality. Reviews of people with mental health problems will be used where available, otherwise studies of people without mental health problems will be utilised.</p> <p>A narrative synthesis will then be used to summarise the evidence across reviews.</p>

¹⁷ Extract from report: "A significant proportion of the evidence on patients' experience of care, along with descriptive reports of interventions and 'promising practice', is published in non-peer reviewed nursing, medical and management journals. In recent years, the nursing press in particular has been intensely preoccupied with debates about patients' experience, the causes of substandard nursing care (Corbin 2008, Maben 2008), and campaigns to protect the dignity of patients (Royal College of Nursing 2008, Levenson 2007). In addition, important information about practice, guidance packs and tool kits can be found on the websites of organisations dedicated to health care improvement such as the NHS Institute for Innovation and Improvement (www.institute.nhs.uk), the Institute for Healthcare Improvement (www.ihl.org), the Commonwealth Foundation (www.commonwealthfoundation.com) and more specialised sites such as those of Marie Curie Palliative Care Institute (for the Liverpool Care Pathway - www.mcpcil.org.uk/liverpool_care_pathway) and campaigning organisations and patients' groups (eg. www.helptheaged.org.uk, www.bgs.org.uk/campaigns/dignity.htm)."

Additional assessments	TBC
------------------------	-----

1

1 **APPENDIX 6: MATRIX OF SERVICE USER EXPERIENCE**

2 **Non-acute care**

3

Dimensions of person-centred care (adapted from Picker Institute, 2009)		Key points on the pathway of care			Themes that apply to all points on the pathway
		Non-acute care			
		Access	Assessment	Community care (including discharge back to primary care)	
The relationship between individual service users & professionals	Involvement in decisions & respect for preferences				
	Clear, comprehensible information & support for self-care				
	Emotional support, empathy & respect				
The way that services and systems work	Fast access to reliable health advice				
	Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals				
	Attention to physical & environmental needs				
	Involvement of, & support for, family & carers				
	Continuity of care & smooth transitions				
Other themes					

4

5

1 **Acute care (not under the Mental Health Act)**

2

Dimensions of person-centred care (adapted from Picker Institute, 2009)		Key points on the pathway of care			Themes that apply to all points on the pathway
		Acute care			
		Assessment and referral in crisis	Hospital care	Discharge/transfer of care	
The relationship between individual service users & professionals	Involvement in decisions & respect for preferences				
	Clear, comprehensible information & support for self-care				
	Emotional support, empathy & respect				
The way that services and systems work	Fast access to reliable health advice				
	Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals				
	Attention to physical & environmental needs				
	Involvement of, & support for, family & carers				
	Continuity of care & smooth transitions				
Other themes					

3

1 **Acute care (under the Mental Health Act)**

2

Dimensions of person-centred care (adapted from Picker Institute, 2009)		Key points on the pathway of care		Themes that apply to all points on the pathway
		Assessment/ admission under the MHA	Receiving compulsory treatment under the MHA	
The relationship between individual service users & professionals	Involvement in decisions & respect for preferences			
	Clear, comprehensible information & support for self-care			
	Emotional support, empathy & respect			
The way that services and systems work	Fast access to reliable health advice			
	Effective treatment delivered by trusted professionals			
	Attention to physical & environmental needs			
	Involvement of, & support for, family & carers			
	Continuity of care & smooth transitions			
Other themes				

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14